OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 33

The History of the Holy War

Ambroise

L'Estoire de la guerre sainte

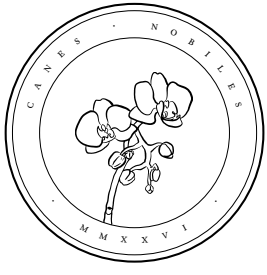
The History of the Holy War

Part Two: From Acre to Jaffa

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

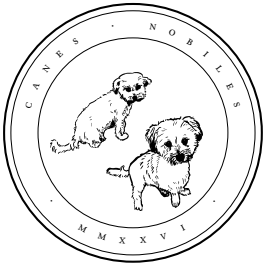


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 33 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Gaston Paris's text, L'Estoire de la guerre sainte: histoire en vers de la troisième croisade (1190–1192) par Ambroise (Paris, 1897), verses 5613–12352

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

This second part of the Estoire begins at Gaston Paris's verse 5613, with the march south from Acre, and runs to the end of the poem; the first part ends with the surrender of Acre. The spelling is that of the one manuscript, in the Vatican, as Paris prints it, and his additions and corrections to the text are printed. A row of asterisks stands where he marks verses lost from the manuscript.

CONTENTS

I · The March Out of Acre 7
II · Haifa, Caesarea, and the Dead River 23
III · The Order of March, and the Eve of Arsuf 43
IV · The Battle of Arsuf 60
V · Before Arsuf, and James of Avesnes Buried 81
VI · Jaffa, and the Counsel over Ascalon 99
VII · The Hamlets Rebuilt, and Saladin's Embassies 116
VIII · The Earl of Leicester's Fight 136
IX · The First Turn Back from Jerusalem 153
X · Ascalon Rebuilt 172
XI · The Captives Freed, and Strife at Acre 186
XII · Holy Week, and the Holy Fire 200
XIII · The Marquis Chosen, and the Marquis Murdered 219
XIV · Henry of Champagne 244
XV · The Taking of the Daron 258
XVI · The Chaplain's Sermon 283
XVII · The Second March on Jerusalem 300
XVIII · The Holy Cross Found, and the Council 324
XIX · The Caravan Taken 337
XX · The Second Turn Back 363
XXI · Jaffa Lost and Retaken 375
XXII · The Battle of Jaffa 405
XXIII · The King's Sickness, and the Truce 434
XXIV · The Pilgrimage, and the King's Departure 452

The March Out of Acre

I

After the garrison of Acre is killed, Richard pitches his tents outside the ditches to gather the host, and the Turks harass it at all hours. In a skirmish a count of Hungary and Hugelot, the king's marshal, are taken. Ambroise tells how the lightly armed Turks flee and turn like a fly. The host, idling in Acre among its wines and women, is drawn out at last, and only the old washerwomen go with it. It crosses the river of Acre on the eve of Saint Bartholomew and marches down the coast, the king in the van; in a mist the Turks fall on the carts, and a sergeant whose hand is cut off fights on. The king rides back and scatters them, William of Barres fights so well that Richard forgives him, and the host camps under Haifa.

Quant la chenaille fud ocise
When the dog-rabble was killed
qui dedenz Acre s'esteit mise,
which inside Acre itself-was put
ou tant nos livrerent ententes,
where so-many to-us delivered troubles
lors fist li reis Richarz ses tentes
then made the king Richard his tents
hors des fossez porter e tendre
out of-the ditches carry and pitch
por l'ost esmoveir e atendre,
for the-host to-move and await
et fist serjanz a pié rengier
and made sergeants on foot range
tot environ sei e logier,
all around himself and lodge

por la fause gent sarazine
for the false folk Saracen
qui veneient o grant ravine
who came with great rush
e tote ure les escriouent
and all hour them shouted-at
quant nostre gent mains se gardouent.
when our folk less themselves guarded
E li reis, quin iert custumers,
And the king who-thereof was accustomed
salloit as armes tot premiers
leapt to-the arms all first
e poigneit dreit as genz haies,
and spurred straight at-the folk hated
e feseit les chevaleries.
and did the chivalries
Un jor avint qu'il enchacerent
One day it-happened that-they chased
et que le barat comencerent.
and that the strife began
Eth vos que nostre gent s'armerent,
Behold you that our folk themselves-armed
li reis e cil qui o lui erent,
the king and those who with him were
si s'arma uns coens de Hungrie
so himself-armed a count of Hungary
et de Hungreis grant compainie;
and of Hungarians great company
encontre les Turs s'en issirent,
against the Turks themselves-thence went-out

si i ot de tels qui bien le firent;
so there were of such who well it did
mais trop chacerent longement,
but too-much chased long
sin furent mené laidement:
so-thereof were led foully
li coens de Hungrie fud pris,
the count of Hungary was taken
qui mult aveit en l'ost grant pris;
who much had in the-host great worth
si en fud Hugeloz menez,
so thence was Hugelot led
un chevalier de Peito nez,
a knight of Poitou born
ki esteit mareschaus le rei.
who was marshal (of-)the king
La poinst le rei tot a desrei,
There spurred the king all at disarray
qui quida Hugelot rescorre;
who thought Hugelot to-rescue
mais menez fud a trop loing core,
but led he-was at too far course
ke li Turc ont un avantage
for the Turks have an advantage
par quei il nos font grant damage:
by which they to-us do great damage
li cristien sunt mult armé,
the Christians are much armed
et li Sarazin desarmé
and the Saracens unarmed

fors d'arc e de mace e d'espee
except of-bow and of mace and of-sword
ou de cane bien aceree
or of cane well steeled
et de cotel qui petit peise;
and of knife which little weighs
et quant l'em les chace a la teise,
and when one them chases at the stretch
il ont chevals n'a tels el monde,
they have horses not-has such in-the world
volant par semblant com aronde;
flying by seeming as swallow
et quant li Turc est tant seuz
and when the Turk is so-much followed
qu'il ne poet estre aconseuz,
that-he not can be overtaken
si a la custume a la mosche
so has the custom of the fly
enuiose e plaine d'entusche:
annoying and full of-venom
toz jorz chasciez e il fuira,
all days chase and it will-flee
retornez e il ensivra.
turn and it will-follow
Alsi feseit la gent engresse
So did the folk fierce
al rei illoques meinte presse:
to-the king there many-a press
e il poigneit e il fuirent,
and he spurred and they fled

e retorneit e il siwirent;
and turned and they followed
tele hore iert qu'il le comperoient,
such hour was that-they it paid-for
e tele hore qu'il gaignoient.
and such hour that-they won
Li reis Richarz iert en sa tente
The king Richard was in his tent
por l'ost atendre en tele atente;
for the-host to-await in such waiting
pereçosement s'en issoient
lazily themselves-thence they-went-out
hors des fossez e poi cressoient;
out of-the ditches and little grew
e la citié d'Acre iert si plaine
and the city of-Acre was so full
de gent que i poeit a paine.
of folk that there one-could with pain
Bien furent d'omes treis cent mile,
Well were of-men three hundred thousand
que dedenz que dehors la vile.
what within what without the town
La gent esteit trop pereşçose;
The folk was too lazy
car la vile iert deliciose
for the town was delightful
de bons vins e de damiseles,
of good wines and of damsels
dont il i aveit de mult beles.
whereof it there had of very fair

Les vins e les femmes hantouent,
The wines and the women they-frequented
et folement se delitouent:
and foolishly themselves delighted
qu'en la vile aveit tant laidure
for-in the town there-was so-much ugliness
e tant pechié e tant luxure
and so-much sin and so-much lust
que li prodome honte aveient
that the worthy-men shame had
de ço que li autre faiseient.
of that which the others did
L'ost s'en issi, qui iert somonse.
The-host itself-thence went-out which was summoned
Si come chandeille en esconse
So as candle in lantern
destaint par vent quant il l'enforce,
goes-out by wind when it it-strengthens
tot autresi a vive force
all likewise at living force
covint lores en l'ost estaindre
behooved then in the-host to-quench
la folie qu'i sueut remaindre;
the folly which-there is-wont to-remain
car totes les femmes remistrent
for all the women remained
dedenz la citié d'Acre e mistrent,
inside the city of-Acre and stayed
fors les bones vielles ovrieres,
except the good old workers

les pelerines lavenderes
the pilgrim washerwomen
qui laveient chiefs e dras linges
who washed heads and cloths linen
e d'espucer valeient singes.
and of-delousing were-worth apes
Eth vos l'ost al matin armee
Behold you the-host at-the morning armed
e par bels conreiz conreee.
and by fair arrays arrayed
Li reis fud en la riere guarde,
The king was in the rear guard
qu'il ne perdissent par mesguarde.
that-they not should-lose by carelessness
Cele jornee fud petite;
That day's-march was little
e si tost com la gent maldite
and so soon as the folk accursed
eurent veu l'ost esmoveir,
had seen the-host move
lors les veissiez esploveir
then them you-might-have-seen pour-down
des montaines, ça vint, ça trente,
from-the mountains here twenty there thirty
car lor pensee iert mult dolente
for their thought was very grieved
de l'ocise que la veoient
of the-slaughter which there they-saw
de lor parenz qui morz gisoient;
of their kinsmen who dead lay

e por içe l'ost engresserent
and for that the-host pressed
e suvirent e apresserent;
and followed and pressed-close
mais, merci Deu, rien n'i forfirent.
but mercy (of-)God anything not-there they-harmed
A tant noz genz d'iloec partirent
At that our folk from-there departed
e le flum d'Acre oltre passerent;
and the river of-Acre beyond crossed
si se tendirent e traverent
so themselves pitched and tented
e sujornerent por atraire
and sojourned for to-draw
la gent qui d'Acre iert fort a traire,
the folk which from-Acre was strong to draw
qui a tel paine fud hors traite
which with such pain was out drawn
ja ne pout estre ensenble atraite.
ever not could be together drawn
L'ost cristiene dont jo di
The-host Christian whereof I speak
passa le flum un vendresdi;
crossed the river a Friday
une feste fud l'endemain,
a feast was the-morrow
que nus ne fist ovre de main,
when anyone not did work of hand
d'un des desciples Dampnedeu,
of-one of-the disciples (of-)Lord-God

l'apostle saint Bartholomeu;
the-apostle saint Bartholomew
e le lundi après sanz faille
and the Monday after without fail
si ot deus anz, que que i faille,
so it-had two years what that there fail
que Acre aveit esté assise,
that Acre had been besieged
qui iert des cristiens porsise.
which was by-the Christians invested
E l'ost s'esmut le diemaine,
And the-host itself-moved the Sunday
el non Deu qui tot garde e maine;
in-the name (of-)God who all guards and leads
al matinet par l'ost monterent
at-the early-morning through the-host they-mounted
e lor batailles conreerent.
and their battalions arrayed
La veissiez chavalerie,
There you-might-have-seen chivalry
la plus bele bachelerie,
the most fair knighthood
la plus preuz, la plus esleue,
the most valiant the most chosen
qui devant ne puis fust veue;
which before or after was seen
la veissiez tanz genz seures
there you-might-have-seen so-many folk sure
e tantes beles armeures
and so-many fair armors

e tanz preuz serjanz e osez
and so-many valiant sergeants and daring
e de grant proesce alosez;
and of great prowess renowned
la veissiez tanz penuncels
there you-might-have-seen so-many pennons
e tanz glaives luisanz e bels;
and so-many spears shining and fair
la veissiez tantes banieres
there you-might-have-seen so-many banners
ovrees en tantes manieres,
worked in so-many manners
tanz bialz haubercs e tanz bials helmes,
so-many fair hauberks and so-many fair helms
n'a tanz de tels en cinc reaulmes;
not-has so-many of such in five realms
la veissiez gent aroutee
there you-might-have-seen folk in-ranks
qui bien deveit estre dotee.
which well ought be feared
Le rei Richarz fist l'avant guarde
The king Richard made the-van guard
e tel gent qui n'iert point coarde.
and such folk who not-was at-all coward
Li Normant a l'estandard erent,
The Normans at the-standard were
qui par plusors feiz le guarderent.
who by many times it guarded
Li dux e Franceis, la gent fiere,
The duke and French the folk proud

cil furent en la guarde ariere;
those were in the guard rear
mais tant se targerent d'errer
but so-much themselves delayed of-journeying
que trop i durent meserrer.
that too-much there were-to go-astray
L'ost errot joste la marine,
The-host journeyed beside the shore
e la cruel gent sarazine
and the cruel folk Saracen
erent es dones a senestre,
were on-the dunes at left
si virent bien de noz genz l'estre;
so saw well of our folk the-state
e une neule esteit levee,
and a mist was risen
qui mult dut l'ost aveir grevee.
which much ought the-host have harmed
La rote esteit aclaroiee
The column was thinned
e en un liu atenvoiee,
and in a place stretched-thin
la ou les charetters errouent
there where the carters journeyed
qui la vitaille lor portouent;
who the victuals to-them carried
e li Sarazin descendirent,
and the Saracens descended
tot dreit as chareters tendirent,
all straight to-the carters headed

chevals e homes i ocistrent,
horses and men there killed
e del herneis assez i pristrent,
and of-the harness plenty there took
e desconfirent e perchierent
and defeated and pierced
cels quil menouent e chacerent
those who-it led and chased
de si que en la mer batant;
from thus that into the sea beating
illoc s'escombatirent tant
there themselves-fought so-much
que un serjant le poing colperent,
that a sergeant the hand they-cut
Evrardz ot non, ce nos conterent,
Everard he-had name that to-us they-told
hom l'evesque de Salesberes;
man (of-)the-bishop of Salisbury
ainc cil ne fist semblant ne heres,
ever he not made semblance nor fuss
quant ot trenchiee la main destre,
when he-had cut-off the hand right
si prist l'espee od la senestre,
so took the-sword with the left
e a estal les atendi
and at stand them awaited
tant que d'els toz se defendi.
so-long that from-them all himself defended
Etht vos tote l'ost estormie:
Behold you all the-host alarmed

le rei Richarz n'en saveit mie;
the king Richard not-thereof knew at-all
la riere guarde iert arestee,
the rear guard was halted
tote esbaie e effreiee.
all dismayed and frightened
Lors poinst Johan le fiz Lucas,
Then spurred John the son (of-)Luke
sil dist al rei en es le pas, 5790
so-it said to-the king in same the step
e li reis vint grant aleure,
and the king came great pace
il e sa maisnee seure,
he and his household sure
e retorna de l'avant guarde,
and turned from the-van guard
si poinst as Turs jusqu'a l'anguarde.
so spurred at-the Turks as-far-as the-vanguard
Plus tost que foldre entr'els se mist, 5795
More quickly than lightning among-them himself put
e ne sai quanz en i ocist
and not I-know how-many thereof there he-killed
ainceis que il le coneusent,
before that they him knew
e mal veisin en lui eussent
and evil neighbor in him they-would-have-had
s'un poi l'eust seu ançois.
if-a little it-he-had known before
La le fist si bien un Franceis, 5800
There it did so well a Frenchman

c'ert de Barres li preu Guillames,
that-was of Barres the valiant William
qui maint Turc fist flatir as palmes,
who many-a Turk made fall on-the palms
e cel jor tant s'abandona
and that day so-much himself-abandoned
que li reis tut li perdona
that the king all to-him forgave
un mal talent qu'a lui aveit,
an ill will which-toward him he-had
si que mal gré ne l'en saveit.
so that ill will not him-thereof knew
Les Turs a la montaine mistrent,
The Turks to the mountain they-put
e ne sai quanz en i ocistrent.
and not I-know how-many thereof there they-killed
Salahadins iert a meisme
Saladin was at same
a son esforz de paeinisme;
with his force of heathendom
mais puis que ses genz reuserent,
but after that his folk drew-back
lors s'aresturent e muserent,
then themselves-halted and dawdled
e l'ost erra tote arotee,
and the-host journeyed all in-ranks
que cil aveient desroutee,
which those had disordered

jusqu'a un flum que il troverent
as-far-as a river which they found
e cisternes qu'il esproverent
and cisterns which-they tried
la se traverent e tendirent,
there themselves tented and pitched
en une grant place qu'il virent,
in a great place which-they saw
ou Salahadins ot geu,
where Saladin had lain
ou bien parut qu'il ot eu
where well appeared that-he had had
merveillose ost a desmesure
marvelous host at excess
de l'engresse gent sanz mesure.
of the-fierce folk without measure
Cele jornee premeraine
That day first
ot l'ost eue tel estraine,
had the-host had such gift
que li Turc del lor guaaignierent:
that the Turks of-the theirs gained
issi va de gent qui conquierent.
thus goes of folk who conquer
Ço fist Deus por lor garison,
That did God for their safety
que l'ost errast sanz mesprison,
that the-host should-journey without fault

e plus seree e mielz rengiee
and more close and better ranged
qu'el n'iert quant el fud leidengee;
than-it was when it was harmed
e il mult bien puis s'en penerent
and they very well afterward themselves-thereof strove
e plus sagement la menerent.
and more wisely it led
Mais mult engrejot lor ovraine,
But much grew-worse their task
car par deriere la montaine
for by behind the mountain
s'en alouent ja la putaille,
themselves-thence went already the rabble
Salahadins e la chenaille,
Saladin and the dog-rabble
as pas estreiz ou il saveient
to-the passes narrow where they knew
que nostre gent passer deveient,
that our folk pass ought
et aveient si l'ovre enprise
and had so the-work undertaken
que nostre ost sereit morte ou prise
that our host would-be dead or taken
ou qu'il tant s'abandonereient
or that-they so-much themselves-would-venture
al mains qu'il la desconfireient.
at-the least that-they it would-defeat

Nostre gent del flum se partirent,
Our folk from-the river themselves departed
mais petite jornee firent:
but little day's-march made
soz Chayphas s'alerent tendre 5845
under Haifa themselves-went pitch
por la menue gent atendre.
for the small folk to-await

Haifa, Caesarea, and the Dead River

II

The host rests two days under Haifa and throws away what it does not need, the foot soldiers spent with heat and loads. With the Temple ahead and the Hospital behind it marches through thorn and high grass, past Capernaum to the casal of the Straits. Each evening a man cries Holy Sepulcher, help, and the host takes up the cry; at night tarantulas sting the pilgrims until the noise of helms and cauldrons drives them off. At Caesarea, where two pilgrims bathing in the river of crocodiles are eaten, the fleet brings the laggards from Acre. Beyond it the Turks lose the emir Ayas Estoi, the host drinks from the Dead River, Richard is wounded by a dart, and the sergeants eat the dead horses at the salt river; then the host passes the forest of Arsuf, which the Turks were said to mean to fire, and camps on the river of Rochetaillee.

Soz Cayphas en la costiere
Under Haifa on the slope
s'iert tendue la prod gent fiere
itself-was pitched the worthy folk proud
de deus parties tot entor
on two parts all around
entre la marine e la tor; 5850
between the shore and the tower

deus jorz illoques sujornerent
two days there they-sojourned
por lor herneis qu'il atornerent,
for their harness which-they prepared
si jeterent ço que n'usoit
so threw that which not-served
e retindrent ço que plaisoit.
and kept that which pleased
Car la gent de pié, la menue,
For the folk of foot the small
iert a si grant paine venue,
was at so great pain come
qui chargie esteit de vitaille
which loaded was with victuals
e des armes por la bataille,
and with-the arms for the battle
qu'assez en i covint remaindre
that-many thereof there behooved to-remain
e de chad e de sei esteindre.
and of heat and of thirst die-out
Quant l'ost Deu se fud sejornee
When the-host (of-)God itself was rested
soz Cayphas e atornee,
under Haifa and prepared
a un marsdi s'en departirent
on a Tuesday themselves-thence departed
e lor batailles establirent.
and their battalions established

Li Temples feseit l'avant guarde
The Temple made the-van guard
e l'Ospitals la riere guarde.
and the-Hospital the rear guard
Qui veist les eschieles faire,
Who might-have-seen the squadrons make
bien sembloit gent de grant affaire;
well it-seemed folk of great affair
si estoit l'ost mielz avoiee
so was the-host better set-on-way
qu'el ne fud a l'autre foiee,
than-it — was at the-other time
e lor estut por le sujor
and them behooved for the rest
grant jornee faire le jor;
great day's-march make the day
mais mult troverent el rivage
but much they-found on-the shore
grant espinei e grant herbage,
great thorn-brake and great grass
qui grevoit la gent peoniere
which harmed the folk on-foot
e les fereit en mi la chiere.
and them struck in midst the face
Tote la terre iert enermie;
All the land was deserted
la veissiez mainte estormie
there you-might-have-seen many-a alarm

de la plenté de salvagine
from the plenty of wild-game
qu'il troveient par la marine,
which-they found along the shore
qui par entre lor piez sailleient,
which through among their feet leapt
si que a grant plenté en perneient.
so that in great plenty thereof they-took
Al chastel de Cafarnaon,
At-the castle of Capernaum
que abatirent cil que haom,
which struck-down those whom we-hate
la vint li reis, si descendi,
there came the king so dismounted
si digna e l'ost atendi;
so dined and the-host awaited
e cil qui voldrent si dignerent
and those who wished so dined
e après digner si errerent
and after dining so journeyed
de si qu'al casel des Destreiz,
from thus till-the casal of-the Straits
qui n'iert pas larges, mais estreiz.
which not-was at-all broad but narrow
Illoc vindrent e descendirent,
There they-came and dismounted
si se traverent e tendirent.
so themselves tented and pitched

Toz jorz quant l'ost iert herbergiee,
All days when the-host was lodged
al seir, ainz qu'ele fust cochiee,
at-the evening before that-it were bedded
i esteit uns hom qui crioit,
there was a man who cried
e tote l'ost s'en recrioit,
and all the-host itself-thereby comforted
car sa voiz esteit mult oie;
for his voice was much heard
cil crioit: «Saint sepulcre aie!»
he cried Holy sepulcher aid
E tuit après lui s'escrioient
And all after him themselves-cried-out
e lor mains vers le ciel dreşçoient,
and their hands toward the heaven raised
e plurouent des oilz del chief;
and wept from-the eyes of-the head
e cil s'escriot derechief,
and he himself-cried-out again
tant que treis feiz aveit crié,
until that three times he-had cried
sin esteient mult recrié.
so-thereof were much comforted
Par jor iert l'ost tote seure;
By day was the-host all safe
mais quant la nuit esteit oscure,
but when the night was dark

lors aveient assez ententes
then they-had much troubles
de vers poignanz e de tarentes,
from worms stinging and from tarantulas
qui grant presse lur i faseient
which great press to-them there made
e qui les pelerins poigneient,
and which the pilgrims stung
e il tot eralment emflouent;
and they all quickly swelled
mais li halt home lor donouent
but the high men to-them gave
del triacle que il aveient,
of-the theriac which they had
que eralment les garisseient.
which quickly them healed
Les tarentes presse lor firent;
The tarantulas press to-them made
mais les sages genz s'avertirent,
but the wise folk themselves-bethought
e quant les vermines veneient
and when the vermin came
e les genz les aperceveient,
and the folk them perceived
donc oisiez en l'ost tel noise,
then you-might-have-heard in the-host such noise
en testimonie en trai Ambroise,
in witness thereof I-draw Ambroise
tel barate, tel bateiz,
such tumult such beating

tel son e tel tambusteiz,
such sound and such din
batoient hiaumes e chapels,
they-beat helms and hats
barriz e seles e panels,
casks and saddles and pads
escuz e targes e roeles,
shields and targes and bucklers
bacins, chauderes e paeles,
basins cauldrons and pans
e les vermines s'en fuioient
and the vermin themselves-thence fled
por la grant noise qu'il oioient;
for the great noise which-they heard
e com il plus s'i auserent,
and as they more themselves-thereto accustomed
e les vermines reuserent.
and the vermin drew-back
Al Casel ou l'ost s'aresta,
At-the Casal where the-host itself-halted
la se guarni e apresta
there itself furnished and prepared
contre la cruel gent haie
against the cruel folk hated
qui puis lor fist meinte envaie.
which afterward to-them made many-a assault
Larges iert li leus e la place.
Broad was the place and the space
Deus jorz de sujor e d'espace
Two days of rest and of-space

covint al rei et a l'ost prendre
behooved to-the king and to the-host take
por viande illoques atendre.
for food there to-await
Lors vindrent les vaissels illoques,
Then came the vessels there
barges e gualees oveques,
barges and galleys with-them
totes veies l'ost costeoient
all ways the-host they-coasted
e la viande lor portoient.
and the food to-them carried
El casel s'estoient torné;
In-the casal themselves-were turned
e li reis aveit atorné
and the king had arranged
al Merle ou il aveit geu
at-the Merle where he had lain
e tot illoques porveu
and all there foreseen
qu'il fereit cel jor l'avant guarde,
that-he would-make that day the-van guard
qu'il n'eussent par devant garde,
that-they not-should-have by before fear
e que cil del Temple fereient
and that those of-the Temple would-make
la riere garde e guaitereient;
the rear guard and would-watch

car Sarazin l'ost aprismerent
for Saracens the-host approached
e tote jor la herdeierent.
and all day it harried
Cel jor poinst li reis d'Engletere,
That day spurred the king of-England
qui bien i dut grant los aquere;
who well there ought great praise acquire
e ne fust le jor par peresce,
and not were the day by laziness
mult i eust ovré proesce;
much there would-have worked prowess
car li reis e ses genz chacerent,
for the king and his folk chased
e tels i aveit parescierent,
and such there were idled
qui al vespre blasmé en furent
who at-the evening blamed thereof were
e qui par dreit estre le durent;
and who by right be it ought
car qui eust le rei seu,
for who had the king followed
riche feit i eust eu;
rich deed there would-have had
mais toz les Turs chaça ariere,
but all the Turks he-chased back
e l'ost erra la sabloniere
and the-host journeyed the sand
belement petite aleure,
fairly little pace

car chad feseit a desmesure,
for heat it-made at excess
et la jornee iert grant e grieve
and the day's-march was great and grievous
qu'il faisoient, ne mie en brieve,
which-they made not at-all in brief
e la chalors les destreineit
and the heat them constrained
si qu'assez en i esteineit.
so that-many thereof there died-out
Icels feseit l'om enterrer,
Those made one bury
cels qui ne poeient errer,
those who not could journey
les travilliez e les lassez,
the toiled and the weary
dont sovent i aveit assez,
whereof often there were plenty
e malades e deshaitiez;
and sick and ailing
e li reis feseit qu'afaitiez
and the king did as-(a-)well-bred-one
quis faiseit porter es gualees
who-them made carry in-the galleys
e es barges jusqu'as jornees.
and in-the barges until-the halts
Cele jornee a paine errerent,
That day's-march with pain they-journeyed
e li herbergeor alerent
and the harbingers went

desqu'a la citié de Cesaire.
as-far-as the city of Caesarea
La ot esté la gent contraire
There had been the folk contrary
e orent la vile abatue
and had the town struck-down
et trop damagiee e fundue;
and too-much damaged and cast-down
mais quant il vint si s'en fuirent,
but when he came so themselves-thence fled
et nostre gent la descendirent,
and our folk there dismounted
si se tendirent e traverent
so themselves pitched and tented
oltre a un flum que il troverent:
beyond at a river which they found
ço est uns flums qu'oncore est diz
that is a river which-still is called
ores li flums as cocatriz,
now the river of-the crocodiles
ou deus pelerins se baignerent
where two pilgrims themselves bathed
e les quoquatriz les mangerent.
and the crocodiles them ate
A Cesaire ou ad grant açainte,
At Caesarea where there-is great enclosure
la ou Deus fist ovraine mainte,
there where God did work many-a
car mult hanta en la costiere,
for much he-frequented in the coast

il e sa companie chiere,
he and his company dear
comanda li reis ses enekes
commanded the king his snekkes
qu'après lui venissent illoques,
that-after him they-should-come there
e fist un ban par Acre faire
and made a ban through Acre make
por la gent pereçose atraire,
for the folk lazy to-draw
que es enekes se meissent
that into-the snekkes themselves they-should-put
e que en l'ost por Deu venissent;
and that into the-host for God they-should-come
e il en i vint grant partie,
and it thereof there came great part
ançois que l'ost s'en fust partie.
before that the-host itself-thence were departed
Eth vos a Cesaire acostee
Behold you at Caesarea landed
la riche estoire une vespree:
the rich fleet one evening
od les barges s'acompaignerent
with the barges themselves-joined
qui chescon jor l'ost costeierent,
which each day the-host coasted
e aveient assez vitaille
and had enough victuals
des nes mal gré a la chenaille.
from-the ships ill will to the dog-rabble

Eth vos l'ost endreit tierce haute,
Behold you the-host right tierce high
ço solt Ambroise en fin sanz falte,
that knew Ambroise in end without fault
armee e d'iloc esmeue,
armed and from-there moved
e si fud mult bien porveue
and so was very well provided
et establie e atornee,
and established and prepared
qu'el fereit petite jornee
that-it would-make little day's-march
por Sarazins, qui aplovouent
for Saracens who poured-in
chescon jor quant il se movouent.
each day when they themselves moved
Icel jor l'ost tut enchaucerent,
That day the-host all they-chased
mais un admirald i leisserent
but an emir there they-left
tant loé de grant hardement
so-much praised for great boldness
e de tres grant force ensement
and for very great force likewise
que neuls hom nel peust abatre
that any man not-him could strike-down
ne ne s'osast sur lui embatre;
nor not himself-would-dare upon him rush

car il avoit si grosse lance
for he had so thick lance
que dous groissurs n'aveit en France:
that two thicker not-there-were in France
ço fud Ayas Estoi,
that was Ayas Estoi
par non issi nomer l'oi.
by name thus name him-I-heard
Li Turc por lui tel doel menerent
The Turks for him such grief made
que lor chevals en escoerent,
that their horses thereby they-docked
e mult volenters l'en portassent
and very willingly him-thence would-carry
se li cristien lor leissasent.
if the Christians them let
A tant d'iloques se partirent,
At that from-there themselves departed
e vindrent tant qu'il descendirent
and came so-far that-they dismounted
sor le flum Mort, qu'orent covert
on the river Dead which-had covered
li felum Sarazin culvert;
the felon Saracens base
mais descovert fu, si en burent
but uncovered it-was so thereof they-drank
e par deus nuiz illoques jurent.
and for two nights there lay

Del flum s'esmut la gent osee,
From-the river itself-moved the folk daring
quant deus jorz se fud reposee;
when two days itself was rested
soef errot, nom mie en haste,
softly journeyed not at-all in haste
par mi la terre povre e gaste.
through midst the land poor and waste
Cel jor par la montaine alerent,
That day by the mountain they-went
car la marine illoc troverent
for the shore there they-found
si encombree et enhermie
so encumbered and overgrown
qu'il ne peussent passer mie.
that-they not could pass at-all
Cel jor fud l'ost plus pres rengiee
That day was the-host more close ranged
qu'el ne fud puis nule foiee.
than-it — was afterward any time
La riere garde fist li Temples,
The rear guard made the Temple
qui al seir se grata les temples,
which at-the evening itself scratched the temples
car tanz chevals le jur perdirent
for so-many horses the day they-lost
por poi qu'il ne s'en esperdirent;
for little that-they not themselves-thereof despaired
e li coens de Saint Pol ovecques,
and the count of Saint Pol with-them

reperdi trop chevals illoques
lost-in-turn too-many horses there
car tant soffri par hardement
for so-much he-suffered by boldness
les Turs e lor hardoiement
the Turks and their harrying
e tant le jor s'abandona
and so-much the day himself-abandoned
que tote l'ost los l'en dona.
that all the-host praise him-thereof gave
Cel jor fud li reis d'Engletere,
That day was the king of-England
qui de pres les Turs aloit quere,
who from near the Turks went to-seek
nafrez d'un pilet el costé
wounded by-a dart in-the side
d'un Turc qu'il aveit acosté;
by-a Turk whom-he had come-alongside
mais ne fud pas blescié grantment,
but not was at-all hurt greatly
ainz lor curut sure eralment.
rather them he-ran upon quickly
La veissiez pilez voler,
There you-might-have-seen darts fly
chevals morir e afoler;
horses die and be-maimed
de pilez veissiez tel pluie
of darts you-might-have-seen such rain
que quatre piez de terre vuie
that four feet of land empty

ne trovissiez en l'entornee
not you-would-find in the-circuit
la ou l'ost Deu esteit tornee,
there where the-host (of-)God was turned
e tote jor issi dura
and all day thus lasted
cil ennuiz que l'ost endura
that annoyance which the-host endured
jusqu'al seir que li Turc se trestrent
until-the evening that the Turks themselves drew
as herberges e se retrestrent.
to-the lodgings and themselves withdrew
E nostre gent se herbergerent,
And our folk themselves lodged
a un flum salé se logierent;
at a river salt themselves lodged
si veissiez illoc grant presse
so you-might-have-seen there great press
as chevals morz de greinor gresse
at-the horses dead of greater fat
qui en cel jor occis i erent:
which on that day killed there were
li serjant la char achaterent
the sergeants the flesh bought
encore a mult chieres denrees,
still at very dear pennyworths
si i aveit de granz mellees;
so there were of great frays

e quant li reis oi l'afaire,
and when the king heard the-affair
si fist crier un ban e faire
so made cry a ban and make
que a cui ses chevals morreit
that to whom his horse would-die
e as pruz serjanz le donreit
and to-the valiant sergeants it would-give
un vif en fereit eschangier;
a living-one thereof he-would-make exchange
e cil les eurent sanz dangier
and those them had without stint
e les pristrent e escorcierent
and them took and flayed
e les bons lardez en mangerent.
and the good fat-bits thereof ate
Deus jorz sujornanz illoc furent
Two days sojourning there they-were
et al tierz endreit tierce murent,
and on-the third right-at tierce they-moved
trestot conreé de bataille;
all arrayed for battle
car l'en lor dist que la chenaille,
for one to-them said that the dog-rabble
li mescreant, li neir oscur,
the misbelievers the black dark-ones
erent en la forest d'Arsur
were in the forest of-Arsuf

e qu'en cel jor l'alumereient,
and that-on that day it-they-would-set-alight
e que si grant feu en fereient
and that so great fire thereof they-would-make
que l'ost en sereit arostee;
that the-host thereby would-be roasted
mais ele erra tote aprestee
but it journeyed all prepared
par la foret d'Arsur sa voie;
through the forest of-Arsuf its way
si ne cuit pas que nus hom voie
so not I-think at-all that any man may-see
ne qu'en un liu nul ost veist
nor that-in a place any host saw
plus bel errer que illoc fist;
more fairly journey than there it-did
n'onques n'orent arestement,
nor-ever not-they-had stop
ainz errerent tot quitement:
rather journeyed all freely
Mont d'Arsur le jor trespasserent
Mount of-Arsuf the day they-passed
e tote la forest passerent,
and all the forest crossed
e vindrent hors a la champaine
and came out to the open-country
herbergier soi en une plaine
to-lodge themselves in a plain

sor le flum de Rochetaillee,
on the river of Rochetaillee
mal gré a la gent retaillee,
ill will to the folk circumcised
qui de tanz lius iert apleue
which from so-many places was poured-in
que cil dit qui l'ost ot veue
that he says who the-host had seen
e sorveue e esguardee
and surveyed and looked-at
e dreit al suen viaire esmee
and right to-the his sight estimated
qu'a treis cent mile les esma,
that-at three hundred thousand them he-estimated
ou que de poi les mesesma;
or that by little them misestimated
e nostre cristien pas n'erent
and our Christians at-all not-were
plus de cent mile, ço esmerent.
more than hundred thousand that they-estimated
Sor le flum de Rochetaillee
On the river of Rochetaillee
la jut l'ost Deu e sa maisnee;
there lay the-host (of-)God and its household
la se herberja un joesdi,
there itself lodged a Thursday
e sujorna le vendresdi.
and sojourned the Friday

The Order of March, and the Eve of Arsuf

III

On the Saturday the host learns it must fight its way, and Richard orders twelve battalions: the Temple in front, then the Bretons and Angevins, the Poitevins with King Guy, the Normans and English with the dragon, and the Hospital in the rear. Ambroise names the barons of the rear guard, from the earl of Leicester and James of Avesnes to William and Dreux of Mello. Henry of Champagne guards the side toward the mountain, the sergeants on foot close the rear, and the baggage goes by the shore. An hour before tierce the Turks come down, archers, Blacks, and the Saracens of the wasteland, and kill the host's horses on every side; the Hospital sends word that it must charge, and the king bids it hold.

Le samedi a l'enjorner
The Saturday at the-dawning
lors veissiez gent atorner
then you-might-have-seen folk prepare
chescon por sa teste defendre;
each for his head to-defend
car l'en lor fist le jor entendre
for one them made the day understand
qu'il ne poreient sanz bataille
that-they not could without battle
pas errer vers la cuvertaille,
at-all journey toward the base-rabble
qui de totes parz aprismouent
who from all sides approached
et lor batailles conreouent;
and their battalions arrayed

et por içe l'ost cristiene
and for that the-host Christian
se guarni si vers la paiene
itself furnished so toward the pagan
qu'il n'i ot as eschieles faire
that-it not-there had at-the squadrons to-make
que reprendre ne que refaire.
what to-reprove nor what to-remake
Richarz, le preuz reis d'Engletere,
Richard the valiant king of-England
qui tant saveit d'ost e de guerre,
who so-much knew of-host and of war
lors devisa a sa maniere
then devised at his manner
qui ireit devant e deriere:
who would-go before and behind
duze batailles conreerent
twelve battalions they-arrayed
e par conreiz les deviserent
and by companies them devised
de tels gens que, tant com cels covre,
of such folk that so-far as heaven covers
n'en eust tant de greinur ovre;
not-thereof there-would-be so-many of greater work
de lor cuers furent bien fichié
of their hearts they-were well fixed
en Deu servir e afichié.
in God to-serve and set

Li Temples fist cel jor l'anzguarde
The Temple made that day the-vanguard
e l'Ospital la riere guarde;
and the-Hospital the rear guard
Breton e Angevin ensemble
Bretons and Angevins together
errouent après, ço me semble;
journeyed after that to-me seems
li Peitevin e li reis Guis
the Poitevins and the king Guy
erent après, si con jo enquis;
were after so as I inquired
Normant e Engleis chevalchouent
Normans and English rode
après, qui le dragon portouent;
after who the dragon carried
e l'Ospitals errot deriere,
and the-Hospital journeyed behind
qui fist cel jor la guarde riere.
which made that day the guard rear
La riere guarde fud guarnie
The rear guard was furnished
le jor de haute baronie,
the day with high baronage
e fud par conreiz conreee
and was by companies arrayed
tot coste a coste e devisee
all side to side and divided

issi serré que d'une pome
thus close that with-an apple
ne ferissiez fors beste ou home;
not you-would-strike except beast or man
e durot de l'ost sarazine
and lasted of the-host Saracen
de si que a val la marine.
from thus that to below the shore
La veissiez tantes banieres
There you-might-have-seen so-many banners
et tantes genz od vistes chieres:
and so-many folk with lively faces
la iert li coens de Leicestre,
there was the count of Leicester
qui ne volsist pas aillors estre;
who not would-wish at-all elsewhere to-be
e s'i esteit de Gornai Hues,
and so-there was of Gournay Hugh
qui aveit genz bien coneues;
who had folk well known
si i ert Guillames de Borriz,
so there was William of Borris
qui de la guerre esteit norris;
who of the war was nurtured
si i ert Guaquelins de Ferieres,
so there was Walkelin of Ferrers
e genz de diverses manieres;
and folk of diverse manners

si i ert de Toeni Rogiers
so there was of Tosny Roger
od grant plenté de chevaliers;
with great plenty of knights
si i ert li preuz Jakes d'Avesne,
so there was the valiant James of-Avesnes
qui Deu mist le jor en son regne;
whom God put the day in his kingdom
si i ert li coens Robert de Dreues
so there was the count Robert of Dreux
e plusurs genz qui erent seues;
and many folk who were his
s'i iert l'evesques de Biavez,
so-there was the-bishop of Beauvais
qui vers son frere s'esteit trez;
who toward his brother himself-was drawn
cil des Barres, cil de Gerlande
those of-the Barres those of Garlande
i raveient compaine grande;
there had-in-turn company great
Guillames et Dreu de Merlo,
William and Dreux of Mello
cil n'en raveient mie po;
those not-thereof had-in-turn at-all little
li lingnage ensemble errouent
the lineages together journeyed
et ensemble se recovrouent,
and together themselves rallied

si que l'ost en iert si liee
so that the-host thereof was so bound
qu'a paine fust desaliee.
that-with pain it-would-be unbound
Li coens Henris, cil de Champaine,
The count Henry he of Champagne
gardoit l'ost devers la montaine:
guarded the-host toward the mountain
icel jor fist la guardecoste,
that day made the side-guard
e toz jorz chevalchoit en coste,
and all days rode in side
e li serjant de pié esteient
and the sergeants of foot were
derieres l'ost, qui la cloeient.
behind the-host who it closed
Le herneis e les guarnestures,
The harness and the provisions
charettes, somiers, trosseures,
carts packhorses bundles
c'ert encontre val el rivage,
that-was toward below on-the shore
qu'il n'en eussent grant damage.
that-they not-thereof had great damage
Issi errot la gent seure,
Thus journeyed the folk sure
soef e petite aleure;
softly and little pace
issi erroient li conrei;
thus journeyed the companies

li dux de Burgoine od le rei
the duke of Burgundy with the king
e prude gent hardie e fiere,
and worthy folk bold and proud
alot devant l'ost e ariere
went before the-host and behind
e en coste destre e senestre,
and in side right and left
por veoir les Turs e lor estre
for to-see the Turks and their state
e por l'ost conduire e mener;
and for the-host to-conduct and lead
e mult les en covint pener,
and much them thereby behooved toil
car endreit tierce avant une hore
for right-at tierce before an hour
lor veneient tuit li Turc sure,
them came all the Turks upon
plus de deus mile od arcs traiant,
more than two thousand with bows shooting
qui si vont l'ost Deu embraiant.
who so go the-host (of-)God pressing-in
Après venoit une gent noire:
After came a folk black
les Noirez ont non, ço est la voire;
the Blacks they-have name that is the truth
e Sarazins de la berrue,
and Saracens of the wasteland
isdos e neirs plus que n'est sue,
hideous and black more than is soot

a pié od ars e od roeles,
on foot with bows and with bucklers
trop vistes genz e trop isneles.
exceedingly lively folk and exceedingly swift
Cil feseient a l'ost tel presse
Those made to the-host such press
qu'il n'aveient ne fin ne cesse.
that-they not-had neither end nor cease
La veissiez par la campaine
There you-might-have-seen through the open-country
des Turcs tante riche compaine,
of-the Turks so-many rich companies
tanz penuncels, tantes enseignes,
so-many pennons so-many ensigns
tantes banieres od enseignes,
so-many banners with ensigns
tanz bials conreiz si acesmez,
so-many fair companies so adorned
plus de trente mil Turs esmés
more than thirty thousand Turks estimated
venir tant acemeement
come so adornedly
droit a l'ost desreeement
straight at the-host unbridledly
sor chevals isnels come foldre!
on horses swift as lightning
Devant lor piez iert grant la poldre;
Before their feet was great the dust

devant les admiralz venoient
before the emirs came
cil qui les buisines tenoient,
those who the trumpets held
li autre timbres et taburs:
the others timbrels and tabors
ne faisoient altres laburs
not made other labors
fors taburer e noise faire
except drum and noise make
et huer et crier et braire.
and hoot and cry and bray
La n'oist l'om pas Deu tonant,
There not-would-hear one at-all God thundering
tant il i ot taburs sonant.
so-much it there had tabors sounding
La chenaille l'ost engressa
The dog-rabble the-host pressed
et assailli et empressa:
and assailed and crowded
de deus liues tot environ
for two leagues all around
ne veissiez plein mon giron
not you-would-have-seen full my lap
de terre voide ne de place,
of land empty nor of place
ne de rien fors de male estrace;
nor of anything except of evil race

e devers mer e devers terre
and toward sea and toward land
s'en alouent si près requere,
themselves-thence went so near to-attack
od tel force e od tel oltrage,
with such force and with such outrage
qu'il lor faiseient grant damage
that-they to-them did great damage
des chevals qu'il lor ocieient;
of-the horses which-they of-them killed
car trop de morz en i cheoient.
for too-many of dead thereof there fell
Mult eurent cel jor grant mestier
Much had that day great need
en l'ost li bon arbalestier
in the-host the good crossbowmen
e li bon serjant qui traioient,
and the good sergeants who shot
qui deriere l'ost se tenoient.
who behind the-host themselves held
Cil quiderent estre enpercié,
Those thought to-be pierced
car il esteient si chargié
for they were so loaded
qu'il ne quidouent hore vivre,
that-they not thought hour to-live
n'eschaper s'en sain ne delivre;
nor-escape themselves-thence sound nor free

e si sachiez bien tut de veir
and so know well all of truth
que li coard par estovoir
that the cowards by necessity
ars e saetes jus jetouent
bows and arrows down threw
e dedenz l'ost se rebotouent,
and into the-host themselves thrust-back
e li hardi qui remaneient,
and the bold who remained
qui l'ost deriere sostenoient,
who the-host behind sustained
aveient tel presse as talons
had such press at-the heels
que ralerent a rebursons
that they-went-back at backwards
icel jor plus qu'autre aleure.
that day more than-other pace
En l'ost n'aveit gent si seure
In the-host not-there-was folk so sure
qui ne volsist par bon curage
who not would-have-wished by good heart
aveir fait son peregrinage;
to-have done his pilgrimage
mais de ço ne me merveil mie,
but of that not myself I-marvel at-all
car l'ost estoit si estormie
for the-host was so alarmed

el costé destre e el senestre
on-the side right and on-the left
qu'onques ne fist home Deus nestre
that-ever not made man God be-born
qui veist gent si achenee
who saw folk so harried
ne ost a tel paine menee.
nor host at such pain led
La veissiez les chevaliers,
There you-might-have-seen the knights
quant il perdouent lor destriers,
when they lost their chargers
tot a pié od les serjanz traire;
all on foot with the sergeants shoot
si vos puis conter e retraire
so to-you I-can tell and relate
c'onques pluie ne neif ne graisle
that-ever rain nor snow nor hail
par grant yvern quant el s'esvelle
in great winter when it itself-wakes
ne vola plus espessement
not flew more thickly
(ço sevent plusor si ge ment)
that know many if I lie
que lor pilet illoc voloient,
than their darts there flew
qui les chevals nos afoloient;
which the horses of-ours maimed

e la les peussiez coillir
and there them you-could gather
a bracees e recoillir,
by armfuls and gather-again
come l'em colt chaume en estoble,
as one gathers straw in stubble
tant i traient de la gent troble,
so-much there shoot of the folk murky
sor noz conreiz tant s'espresserent
upon our companies so-much themselves-pressed
que par un poi que nes plaiserent.
that by a little that not-them they-crushed
Lors manda l'Ospital al rei
Then sent-word the-Hospital to-the king
qu'il grevouent trop lor conrei,
that-they harmed too-much their company
e que plus soffrir ne poreient
and that more suffer not they-could
en manere s'il ne poigneient.
in manner if-they not spurred
Li reis manda qu'il se tenissent
The king sent-word that-they themselves should-hold
e que lor meschief sustenissent;
and that their mischief should-sustain
et il a force le sustindrent
and they by force it sustained
et a meschief lor voie tindrent.
and at mischief their way held

Mult fist grant chaut cele jornee
Very made great heat that day
que Dampnedeus ot atornee.
which Lord-God had prepared
Li chauz fud grant e la gent fiere
The heat was great and the folk fierce
qui la nostre enchasçoit ariere;
which the ours chased behind
si ne larai que jo ne die
so not I-will-leave that I — say
qu'il n'a el monde si hardie,
that-it not-has in-the world so bold
qui veist l'espoisse e la presse
who saw the-thickness and the press
de la paene gent engresse,
of the pagan folk fierce
le desrei e la grant emprise
the disarray and the great enterprise
dont diables l'aveit esprise,
whereof devil it-had fired
qui n'eust aucune dotance,
who not-would-have any doubt
qui veist nostre mesestance,
who saw our distress
s'il ne cuneust lor custume;
if-he not knew their custom
car tot ausi com sor l'enclume
for all likewise as upon the-anvil
forgent ferron a longues chaudes,
forge smiths at long heats

tot autresi lor genz por baudes
all likewise their folk for bold
feroient sor la riere guarde,
struck upon the rear guard
dont meint prosdom iert le jor guarde;
whereof many-a worthy-man was the day guard
* * *
(lacuna)
et il point ne se regardoient
and they at-all not themselves regarded
issi com il faire devoient,
thus as they do ought
e cil grant cuivre lor faisoient,
and those great annoyance to-them made
quis conveoient a les maces:
who-them escorted with the maces
la veissiez des voides places
there you-might-have-seen of-the empty places
endroit tels genz qui aillors fussent,
right-by such folk who elsewhere were
qui a enui requeneussent
who to annoyance would-acknowledge
que por les Turs estal gerpissent
that for the Turks stand they-abandoned
ne por els plein pas guencheissent;
nor for them full pace swerved
mais la tot autrement le firent,
but there all otherwise it they-did
que fierement se combatirent,
for proudly themselves fought

e se feroient en la rote
and themselves struck into the throng
par droite destresce e par dote;
by right distress and by doubt
mais ço n'iert mie de merveille,
but that not-was at-all of marvel
se aucons de ço s'esmerveille:
if anyone of that himself-marvels
car toz l'esforz de paenie,
for all the-force of heathendom
de Damas de si qu'en Persie,
from Damascus from thus till-into Persia
des la mer jusqu'en Orient,
from the sea until-into Orient
n'avoit remis hardie gent,
not-had remained bold folk
ne seure ne alosee,
nor sure nor renowned
ne conqueranz ne preuz ne osee,
nor conquering nor valiant nor daring
que Salehadins n'eust quise,
which Saladin not-had sought
louee e proiee e requise
hired and prayed and asked
e porchaciee e retenue,
and procured and retained
por la gent Deu qui ert venue,
for the folk (of-)God which was come
qu'il quidot lores desconfire;
which-he thought then to-defeat

mais n'i peussent pas soffire,
but not-there could at-all suffice
quar la flur de chevalerie,
for the flower of chivalry
li grains de la bachelerie,
the grain of the knighthood
gent tote duite de bataille,
folk all trained of battle
s'iert la levee de la paille
itself-was there raised from the chaff
de tote la lei cristiaine
of all the law Christian
por josteier sor la paiene,
for to-joust upon the pagan
genz tote preuz e tote eslite;
folk all valiant and all chosen
e qui ceste eust desconfite,
and who this had defeated
donc peust il bien en fin dire
then could he well in end say
que rien ne l'osast contredire.
that anything not him-would-dare gainsay

The Battle of Arsuf

IV

In heat and dust the Turks, who call the crusaders folk of iron, put up their bows and come on with maces against the Hospital. Garnier of Nablus begs the king to let them charge, and Richard tells him to endure. Six trumpets were to give the signal, but the Hospital's marshal and Baldwin the Caron spur out first, and the whole host turns and charges after them. The Turks are broken; Richard rides into the press, the Turks rally and charge again, and the host re-forms at the standard and camps at Arsuf. Thirty-two emirs lie dead on the field, and James of Avesnes, his horse fallen, is killed with three of his kin, left unhelped, men say, by the count of Dreux.

Grant iert la poldre e la chalor,
Great was the dust and the heat
e les genz Deu plains de valor;
and the folk (of-)God full of valor
fiers iert li poeples al diable,
fierce was the people to-the devil
e le Deu preuz e defensable;
and that-of God valiant and defensible
la iert des Turs entasseiz
there was of-the Turks heap
plus espès que un plesseiz.
more thick than a hedge
Li cristien lor voie errouent,
The Christians their way journeyed
e cil as dos les enchaçouent;
and those at-the backs them chased
mais poi lor porent damagier.
but little them could damage

La veissiez Turs enragier,
There you-might-have-seen Turks rage
le poeple al diable d'enfer,
the people to-the devil of-hell
qui nos clamoient gent de fer;
who us called folk of iron
quar tant avioms armeures
for so-many we-had armors
que nos gens erent si seures
that our folk were so sure
qu'il en cremoient mains lor cuivre.
that-they thereof feared less their annoyance
Cil metoient lor arcs en cuivre
Those put their bows in quiver
e venoient as maces sore.
and came with-the maces upon
Plus de vint miliers en poi d'ore
More than twenty thousands in little of-hour
sor l'Ospital erent a forge,
upon the-Hospital were at forge
quant li uns d'els clama: «Saint Jeorge,
when the one of-them cried Saint George
lairez vos nos issi confondre?
will-let you us thus confound
Or devreit cristienté fondre,
Now ought Christendom melt
quant encontre ceste chenaille
when against this dog-rabble
ne se poroffre de bataille!»
not itself offers of battle

C'ert de Napes freres Guarniers,
That-was of Nablus brother Garnier
li mestres des Hospitaliers.
the master of-the Hospitallers
Cil vint al roi, poignant en haste,
He came to-the king spurring in haste
si li dist: «Sire, l'en nos haste
so to-him said Lord one us presses
od trop grant honte e o laidure;
with too great shame and with outrage
chescons pert sa chevalcheure.»
each loses his mount
E li rois dist: «Soffrez, bel mestre:
And the king said Endure fair master
l'en ne puet mie par tot estre.»
one not can at-all through all be
Cil vint od son conrei ariere;
He came with his company back
li Turc enchaçouent deriere,
the Turks chased behind
si qu'il n'i ot prince ne conte
so that-it not-there had prince nor count
qui en soi n'en eust grant honte,
who in himself not-thereof had great shame
e disoient: «Seignors, poignomes!
and said Lords let-us-spur
L'en nos tendra por malvès homes.
One us will-hold for bad men
Tel honte ne fu mes veue,
Such shame not was before seen

n'onques mes par gent mescreue
nor-ever before by folk misbelieving
nen ot nostre ost tel reprover;
not had our host such reproach
e se por aucon recoillier
and if for anyone to-rally
ne nos offrions a defendre,
not ourselves we-offer to defend
ja i porrions trop atendre.»
already there we-could too-long wait
Deus! quel perte, quel mescheance,
God what loss what mischance
e quel doel e quel mesestance
and what grief and what distress
avint en l'ost a cel termine,
befell in the-host at that term
ou tant moreit gent sarazine
where so-many would-die folk Saracen
se pechié n'eust destorbiee
if sin not-had disturbed
la pointe qui fud devisee!
the charge which was devised
Endementers qu'il devisoient
While that-they devised
cele pointe ou tuit s'acordoient,
that charge where all themselves-agreed
et avoient ja esgardé,
and had already decided
s'il l'eussent a droit gardé,
if-they it-had at right kept

ainçois que li conroi poinsissent,
before that the companies should-spur
qu'en l'ost en trois lius establisent
that-in the-host in three places they-should-set
sis busines qui soneroient
six trumpets which would-sound
quant vers les Turs retorneroient,
when toward the Turks they-would-turn
deus devant l'ost e deus deriere
two before the-host and two behind
e deus en mi d'autre maniere;
and two in midst of-other manner
e s'ensi l'eussent tenu,
and if-thus it-they-had held
li Turc fussent tuit retenu;
the Turks would-be all retained
mais par deus homes les perdirent
but by two men them they-lost
qui pas de poindre ne se tindrent,
who at-all of spurring not themselves held
mais tut premerains s'eslaisserent
but all first themselves-launched
si que deus Turs morz i laisserent.
so that two Turks dead there they-left
L'un des deus fud uns chevaliers,
The-one of-the two was a knight
li mareschals ospitaliers;
the marshal Hospitaller
l'autre iert Baudowins li Carons,
the-other was Baldwin the Caron

qui iert hardiz com uns leons:
who was bold as a lion
compainz iert le rei d'Engletere,
companion was (of-)the king of-England
qui l'ot amené de sa terre.
who him-had brought from his land
Cist commencerent le desrei
These began the disorder
el saint non del tot poissant rei;
in-the holy name of-the all mighty king
Saint Jorge a haute voiz crierent,
Saint George with high voice they-cried
e les genz Dampnedeu tornerent
and the folk (of-)Lord-God turned
lor chevals ço davant dariere
their horses that before behind
encontre la cruel gent fiere.
against the cruel folk fierce
Lors poinst l'Ospital tot rengiez,
Then spurred the-Hospital all ranged
qui mult ot esté leidengez;
which much had been harmed
si poinst li sires de Champaine,
so spurred the lord of Champagne
e il e sa chiere compaine;
both he and his dear company
si poinst Jakes d'Avesne illoques
so spurred James of-Avesnes there
e cist de son lignage ovecques;
and these of his lineage with-him

si poinst lores li coenz Roberz,
so spurred then the count Robert
cil de Driues, jo en sui tot cerz,
he of Dreux I thereof am all certain
le evesque de Biauveiz od lui,
the bishop of Beauvais with him
icil poinstrent ensemble andui;
those spurred together both
si i poinst li coens de Leicestre
so there spurred the count of Leicester
vers la marine sor senestre;
toward the shore upon left
et tuit cil de la riere guarde,
and all those of the rear guard
un point n'i ot de gent coarde;
a whit not-there was of folk coward
e après poinstrent Angevin,
and after spurred Angevins
Breton, Mansel e Peitevin,
Bretons Manceaux and Poitevins
e li autre conrei ensemble.
and the other companies together
Si vos dirai ço qu'il me semble:
So to-you I-will-say that which-it to-me seems
que li prodome qui la poinstrent
that the worthy-men who there spurred
de tels esforz as Turs se joinstrent
with such forces to-the Turks themselves joined

que chescon al suen qu'il atainst
that each to-the his-own whom-he reached
le fer del glaive el cors li tainst,
the iron of-the spear in-the body to-him dyed
si qu'il lui covint voidier sele.
so that-it him behooved empty saddle
A cele gent semble novele,
To that folk it-seems news
car il sorvindrent come foldre:
for they came-upon like lightning
la veissiez voler grant poldre;
there you-might-have-seen fly great dust
et tuit cil qui a pié esteient
and all those who on foot were
descendu, qui as ars traoient,
dismounted who with-the bows shot
qui mult eurent noz genz grevees,
who much had our folk harmed
cil orent les testes copees,
those had the heads cut
e si com il les abatoient
and so as they them struck-down
e les serjanz les ocioent.
and the sergeants them killed
E des que onques li reis troblee
And as-soon that ever the king troubled
vit l'ost e qu'el fud assemblee,
saw the-host and that-it was engaged

des esperons al cheval tendre
of-the spurs to-the horse tender
dona chau pas sanz plus atendre:
gave hot foot without more waiting
de grant air le leissa corre,
with great force it let run
as premerains conreiz socurre.
to-the first companies to-succor
Plus tost que quarels d'arbaleste,
More quickly than bolt of-crossbow
od sa maisnee preuz e teste,
with his household valiant and stout
ala ferir en tas sor destre
went to-strike in heap on right
un conrei de la gent paestre
a company of the folk pagan
si durement qu'il esbairent
so hard that-they were-dismayed
des prodomes qu'il i sentirent,
by-the worthy-men whom-they there felt
qui lor firent voidier les seles:
who them made empty the saddles
gisanz espès come gaveles
lying thick as sheaves
les veissiez gisir a tere;
them you-might-have-seen lie on earth
e li vaillanz rei d'Engletere
and the valiant king of-England
les porsiwi e corut sore,
them pursued and ran upon

qui le fist si bien a cele ore
who it did so well at that hour
qu'entor lui avoit de charriere
that-around him there-was of track
sus e jus, encoste e deriere,
up and down beside and behind
des Sarazins qui mort chaeient,
of-the Saracens who dead fell
que li autre en sus se traieient,
that the others in up themselves drew
e duroit bien des morz la trace
and lasted well of-the dead the trail
demie liuue pres d'espace.
half league nearly of-space
La veissiez Turs tresbuchier
There you-might-have-seen Turks tumble
e Sarazins deschevalchier;
and Saracens unhorse
la veissiez poldre voler,
there you-might-have-seen dust fly
que nostre gent dut afoler:
which our folk was-to maim
car quant de la grant presse issoient
for when from the great press they-came-out
adonc ne s'entreconeissoient
then not each-other-knew
por la poldre qui iert levee,
for the dust which was raised
si que lor paine en ert doblee.
so that their pain thereby was doubled

Lors feroient destre e senestre:
Then they-struck right and left
la orent li Turc malveis estre;
there had the Turks evil state
la veissiez cops departir
there you-might-have-seen blows deal
e gent sanglent del champ partir;
and folk bloody from-the field depart
la veissiez chair banieres,
there you-might-have-seen fall banners
e tanz penoncels de manieres,
and so-many pennons of manners
tantes bones trenchanz espees
so-many good cutting swords
e tantes canes acerees,
and so-many canes steeled
tanz arcs torqueis e tantes maces
so-many bows Turkish and so-many maces
peussiez prendre en plusors places,
you-could take in many places
quarels e pilez e seetes,
bolts and darts and arrows
chargiees plus de vint charetes;
laden more than twenty carts
la veissiez tanz Turs od barbes,
there you-might-have-seen so-many Turks with beards
morz gesir espès come jarbes;
dead lie thick as sheaves

la veissiez caple tenu
there you-might-have-seen slaughter held
de cels qui s'erent pres tenu;
of those who themselves-were near held
e cil qui abatu esteient,
and those who struck-down were
qui lor chevals perduz aveient,
who their horses lost had
e cil es buisons se botouent
and those into-the bushes themselves thrust
et es arbres a mont montouent,
and into-the trees to mount climbed
e d'iloc les aleit l'en traire,
and from-there them went one to-shoot
sis oissiez al tuer braire.
so-them you-might-have-heard at-the killing bray
Tels i ot lor chevals guerpirent,
Such there were their horses abandoned
que devers la mer s'en fuirent
who toward the sea themselves-thence fled
e saillirent jus des faleises,
and leapt down from-the cliffs
lais a val plus de dis teises.
there to below more than ten fathoms
Bien furent lor gent reusees,
Well were their folk driven-back
que de deus granz liuues ferees
that for two great leagues full
n'i veissiez fors gent fuitive,
not-there you-might-have-seen except folk fleeing

qui devant esteit si braidive;
which before was so boastful
car totes noz genz retornerent,
for all our folk returned
e cil qui l'estandard garderent
and those who the-standard guarded
(c'erent Normant la gent seure)
that-were Normans the folk sure
tote lor petite aleure
all their little pace
retornerent une grant piece
returned a great while
issi, come mis cuers sospiece,
thus as my heart suspects
qu'ainz empeirast mult l'autre affaire
that-before would-worsen much the-other affair
que l'em lor peust grant mal faire.
than one them could great harm do
Li poigneor qui od Deu furent
The spurrers who with God were
après lor poindre s'aresturent,
after their charge themselves-halted
e si tost com il s'aresterent,
and so soon as they themselves-halted
e li Sarazin recuvrerent.
and the Saracens recovered
Plus de vint miliers en venoient
More than twenty thousands thereof came
qui les maces es poinz tenoient
who the maces in-the fists held

a rescorre les abatuz.
to rescue the struck-down
La veissiez les noz batuz,
There you-might-have-seen the ours beaten
cels qui a l'ost se retraioient.
those who to the-host themselves withdrew
Li Sarazin toz jorz traioient,
The Saracens all days shot
e si feroient od les maces,
and so struck with the maces
e quassoient testes e braces
and shattered heads and arms
si qu'as arçons les enclinoient,
so that-on-the saddlebows them they-bent
e li prodome recovroient
and the worthy-men recovered
quant lor aleine aveient prise;
when their breath had taken
lors poigneient od grant emprise
then spurred with great enterprise
e se fereient es conreiz,
and themselves struck into-the companies
e les rompoient come roiz.
and them broke like nets
La veissiez seles torner
There you-might-have-seen saddles turn
e Turcs guenchir et retorner;
and Turks swerve and return

la fud nostre gent si chargiee
there was our folk so pressed
qu'ele n'errast pas une archiee,
that-it not-would-journey at-all a bowshot
se li conrei ne s'arestasent,
if the companies not themselves-halted
que chierement nel comperassent.
that dearly not-it they-paid
La iert l'amiralz Dequedin,
There was the-emir Dequedin
un des parenz Salahadin,
one of-the kinsmen (of-)Saladin
qui ot portrait en sa baniere
who had portrayed in his banner
enseignes d'estrange maniere:
ensigns of-strange manner
ço estoit une baniere as braies,
that was a banner with-the breeches
c'erent ses enseignes veraies.
that-were his ensigns true
Ço iert li Turs qui ot volenté
That was the Turk who had will
haieit plus la cristienté;
hated most the Christendom
cil aveit en sa compaignie
he had in his company
plus de set cent Turs de baillie,
more than seven hundred Turks of power

la gent Salahadin demaine
the folk (of-)Saladin own
qui conquisse fust a grant paine.
which conquered would-be with great pain
Chescons conrei a sa maniere
Each company at its manner
aveit une jalne baniere
had a yellow banner
od penuncel d'autre teinture;
with pennon of-other dye
e vint de si grant aleure,
and he-came at so great pace
od tele frainte, od tele emprise
with such crash with such enterprise
de ferir la gent bien aprise,
of striking the folk well taught
qui a l'estandard retornerent
who to the-standard returned
od les armes que il porterent,
with the arms which they bore
qu'il n'i ot si preu ne si cointe
that-it not-there had so valiant nor so clever
de toz qui a icele pointe
of all who at that charge
n'eussent assez a entendre.
not-had much to attend
La veissiez noz genz atendre,
There you-might-have-seen our folk wait

la veissiez meinte aatie,
there you-might-have-seen many-a rivalry
la veissiez fort departie,
there you-might-have-seen strong parting
car ariere a l'ost s'en revindrent:
for back to the-host themselves-thence came-back
car Sarazin si cort les tindrent
for Saracens so short them held
que toz les cors i chancelerent,
that all the bodies there tottered
si que poi genz i retornerent;
so that few folk there returned
ainz les paioient sor les helmes,
rather them paid upon the helms
quant des Barres li preuz Guillames
when of-the Barres the valiant William
fist un poindre que tuit proiserent:
made a charge which all prized
car il e ses genz se lancerent
for he and his folk themselves launched
par entre les noz e la presse
through between the ours and the press
de l'enuiose gent engresse,
of the-annoying folk fierce
e si durement les ferirent
and so hard them struck
que ne sai quant Turs i chairent,
that not I-know how-many Turks there fell
qui onques puis ne virent guerre.
who ever after not saw war

Et Richarz li reis d'Engletere
And Richard the king of-England
repoinst par devers la montaine,
spurred-in-turn by toward the mountain
il e sa hardie compaine,
he and his bold company
et seeit el favel de Cypre
and sat on-the fauvel of Cyprus
(n'ot tel cheval de ci qu'a Ypre),
not-was such horse from here till-to Ypres
e fist tantes chevaleries
and did so-many chivalries
sor les laides genz enemies,
upon the ugly folk enemy
qu'a grant merveille l'esgardouent
that-with great marvel him-they-watched
com il e ses genz assembloent.
how he and his folk engaged
Tant les reuserent e tindrent
So-much them drove-back and held
que noz genz a l'estandard vindrent,
that our folk to the-standard came
e derechief se conreerent.
and again themselves arrayed
Lors chevalcherent e errerent
Then rode and journeyed
jusqu'a Arsur ou descendirent;
until-to Arsuf where dismounted
lors se traverent e tendirent,
then themselves tented and pitched

car bien iert hore d'ostel prendre.
for well was hour of-lodging to-take
Qui au seir volt a guain tendre
Who at-the evening wished to gain tend
si vint la ou fud la bataille,
so came there where was the battle
si guaigna assez sanz faille;
so won plenty without fail
si distrent cil qui i alerent
so said those who there went
qui des Sarazins morz conterent
who of-the Saracens dead counted
que trente dous barons de terre,
that thirty two barons of land
admiralz, k'il vindrent puis quere,
emirs whom-they came afterward to-seek
en cel champ a cel jor mururent,
in that field on that day died
et set cent Turs qui illoc esturent,
and seven hundred Turks who there stayed
estre cels qui nafré esteient,
besides those who wounded were
qui par mi les chams mort chaeient,
who through midst the fields dead fell
e des noz n'i ot pas la disme
and of-the ours not-there was at-all the tenth
morz iluec, non pas la redisme.
dead there not at-all the tenth-again

Ha! Deus, si grant descomfiture
Ah God so great defeat
et si laide mesaventure
and so ugly misadventure
nos avint la ou li noz erent,
to-us befell there where the ours were
quant li Sarazin recovrerent,
when the Saracens recovered
d'un prodome que il forsclostrent,
of-a worthy-man whom they shut-out
en lor recovrer et enclostrent!
in their recovering and enclosed
Ço fu li preuz Jaques d'Avesne,
That was the valiant James of-Avesnes
dont Deus face saint en son regne,
whom God make saint in his kingdom
car de lui trop nus meschai
for of him too-much to-us mis-befell
par son cheval qui lui chai;
by his horse which with-him fell
mais il fist tant de sei defendre
but he did so-much of himself defending
que l'en nos dist e fist entendre
that one to-us said and made understand
que après la fin de la bataille,
that after the end of the battle
quant il jut entre la chenaille
when he lay among the dog-rabble
e l'en enveia son cors quere,
and one sent his body to-seek

que en un poi espace de terre
that in a little space of land
entor le cors de lui troverent
around the body of him found
li prodome qui i alerent
the worthy-men who there went
bien quinze Turs tot detrenchiez,
well fifteen Turks all cut-to-pieces
dont li prodom s'esteit vengiez.
whereof the worthy-man himself-was avenged
Sei quart de parenz i mururent,
Himself fourth of kinsmen there died
si que onques nes sucururent
so that ever not-them succored
tels genz dont il fud grant parlance:
such folk whereof it was great talk
ço fud un des barons de France,
that was one of-the barons of France
ço diseient, li coens de Dreues,
that they-said the count of Dreux
il e les genz qui erent sues,
he and the folk who were his
sin oi l'en tant gent mesdire
so-thereof heard one so-much folk speak-ill
que l'estorie nel puet desdire.
that the-history not-it can gainsay

Before Arsuf, and James of Avesnes Buried

V

The host camps before Arsuf and mourns James of Avesnes as no single death since Adam's. On the Sunday, the feast of the Virgin in September, Hospitallers, Templars, and Turcopoles search the field, find his body, wash a face too wounded to be known otherwise, and carry him to Arsuf, where Richard and Guy bury him in the minster. Ambroise then turns to the Turks: their boast to Saladin, their rout up the mountain, and Saladin's anger at his emirs. Sanguis of Aleppo blames the Franks' armor and Melec Richard; Saladin bids Saphadin raze Ascalon and the castles of the land, and on Kaysac's counsel sends thirty emirs to watch the river of Arsuf as the host rides out.

Devant Arsur fud l'ost travee,
Before Arsuf was the-host tented
qui ot la gent paiene avee,
which had the folk pagan checked
et tote l'eust el feit mate,
and all it-would-have in-the deed checkmated
qui eust eu dreite estate.
who had had right state
Etht vos la novele espandue
Behold you the news spread
de nostre gent qui iert perdue,
of our folk which was lost
non pas perdue, mais trovee,
not at-all lost but found
qu'ele s'iert por Deu esprovee,
for-it itself-was for God proved

Jake d'Avesne e sa maisnee
James of-Avesnes and his household
qui esteit morte e detrenchiee.
which was dead and cut-to-pieces
Eth vos l'ost Deu tote pensive,
Behold you the-host (of-)God all pensive
e si troblee e si baive
and so troubled and so dismayed
c'onques de la mort un sol home
that-ever of the death (of-)a single man
pois que Adam morst en la pome
since that Adam bit in the apple
ne fud oie si grant plainte
not was heard so great lament
ne tel regret ne tel complainte;
nor such regret nor such complaint
et il feseit mult bien a pleindre,
and he was very well to lament
car mult bien servi Deu, sanz faindre,
for very well served God without feigning
qui en aveit ja esguardé
who thereof had already looked-for
en paradis iert porguardé
in paradise was kept
son liu o seint Jake l'apostre,
his place with saint James the-apostle
quil teneit a son, non a nostre,
who-it held to his not to ours

Jake d'Avesne le martyr,
James of-Avesnes the martyr
qui des Turcs ne deigna partir.
who from-the Turks not deigned to-depart
Devant Arsur fud l'ost tendue
Before Arsuf was the-host pitched
sur la grant rivere espandue
on the great river spread
e la nuitiee reposerent,
and the night rested
car durement traveille erent
for hard toiled were
de cops doner e receveir,
of blows giving and receiving
si ne s'en voldrent pas moveir
so not themselves-thence wished at-all to-move
devant a la tierce jornee,
before at the third day
que l'ost refud bien atornee.
that the-host was-again well prepared
Un samedi fud la bataille,
A Saturday was the battle
e le diemeinge sanz faille
and the Sunday without fail
fud la feste a la gloriose,
was the feast to the glorious-one
la mere Deu, la preciose,
the mother (of-)God the precious
cele que l'em feit en setembre,
that-one which one makes in September

et l'estorie issi le remembre.
and the-history thus it remembers
Lors s'armerent Hospitalier
Then themselves-armed Hospitallers
e del Temple li chevalier
and of-the Temple the knights
e des proz Turcoples menerent,
and of-the valiant Turcopoles they-led
e mult d'autres genz i alerent:
and many of-other folk there went
eth les vos el champ ou cil jurent
behold them you in-the field where those lay
qui mort en la bataille furent.
who dead in the battle were
Par le champ quistrent e cerchierent,
Through the field they-sought and searched
einz ne burent ne ne mangerent
before not they-drank nor not ate
devant ço qu'il orent trové
before that that-they had found
le cors del vassal esprové,
the body of-the vassal proved
Jake d'Avesne, qu'il troverent;
James of-Avesnes whom-they found
mais le vis anceis li laverent
but the face before to-him they-washed
ou ja meis ne fust coneuz,
or ever more not would-be known
tant aveit mortels cops euz
so-many he-had mortal blows had

issi com il se defendeit
thus as he himself defended
des Sarazins qu'il atendeit.
from-the Saracens whom-he awaited
Le cors covrirent e chargierent,
The body they-covered and loaded
e a Arsur s'en repairerent.
and to Arsuf themselves-thence returned
La veissiez grant compaignie
There you-might-have-seen great company
de gent et de chevalerie
of folk and of chivalry
qui encontre le cors alerent,
who to-meet the body went
e qui tel doel en demenerent
and who such grief thereof made
que soz ciel n'a riens quis veist
that under heaven not-has anything who-them saw
qui trop grant pitié n'en preist:
who too great pity not-thereof took
li un regretot sa proesce,
the one lamented his prowess
l'autre retraiot sa largesce.
the-other recounted his largesse
Le jor fud li reis d'Angletere
The day was the king of-England
e li reis Guis al metre en terre
and the king Guy at-the putting in earth

el moster de la seinte dame
in-the minster of the holy lady
qui deprit son douz filz por l'ame
who may-pray her sweet son for the-soul
dont le cors fud la herbergiez!
whose the body was there lodged
Après la messe li clergiez
After the mass the clergy
refirent lor altre servise
did-in-turn their other service
ententivement a lor guise;
attentively at their guise
* * *
(lacuna)
e li halt home le cors pristrent
and the high men the body took
entre lor braz, si l'entererent:
between their arms so it-buried
ne demandez s'il i plorerent.
not ask if-they there wept
Ore lairons de cest affaire
Now we-will-leave of this affair
de parler e d'acunte faire
of speaking and of-account making
ci endreit a ceste feiee;
here right at this time
mais ja de riens n'iert desvoiee,
but ever from anything not-will-be strayed

car tote est de nostre matiere,
for all it-is of our matter
si reprendrons tot en ariere,
so we-will-take-up all in back
e dirons de la gent haie
and we-will-tell of the folk hated
qui nos orent fait l'envaie.
who to-us had made the-assault
La gent de bien desausee
The folk of good unaccustomed
ot esté issi reusee
had been thus driven-back
com jo aveie devant conté,
as I had before told
* * *
(lacuna)
si com il s'esteient vanté
so as they themselves-were boasted
al soldan par lor grant fierté,
to-the sultan by their great fierceness
qu'il lui diseient sanz vantance,
that-they to-him said without boasting
senz faille et sanz nule dotance
without fail and without any doubt
sereit cristienté aquise
would-be Christendom acquired
a cel terme e morte e conquise.
at that term both dead and conquered
Mais altrement aloit l'ovraine;
But otherwise went the-work

car qui lors veist la montaine
for who then saw the mountain
par ont icel Turc s'en fuirent,
by where those Turks themselves-thence fled
ço nos conterent cil quil virent
that to-us told those who-it saw
que quant lor genz as noz hurterent
that when their folk to-the ours struck
qu'a tel vertu les reuserent
that-with such strength them they-drove-back
c'a tot le herneis s'en fuioient,
that-with all the harness themselves-thence fled
e tanz chameilz morz i chaeient
and so-many camels dead there fell
e tanz chevals bruns e bauçans,
and so-many horses brown and piebald
muls e mules, milliers e çanz,
mules and she-mules thousands and hundreds
e tant perdeient a cele hore
and so-much they-lost at that hour
quant noz genz lor corurent sore,
when our folk them ran upon
que si lor ost fust mielz chaciee
that if their host were better chased
e mielz siwie e enchaciee,
and better followed and pursued
la terre fust nostre aquitee
the land would-be ours freed
e de cristiens habitee.
and by Christians inhabited

Quant l'ost des Turs se fud retraite
When the-host of-the Turks itself was withdrawn
et cele chose ot esté faite
and that thing had been done
e Salahadins sot l'ovraine,
and Saladin knew the-work
qui esteit devers la montaine,
who was toward the mountain
quant il vit sa gent desconfite,
when he saw his folk defeated
la meillor et la plus eslite,
the best and the most chosen
a ses admiralz prist a dire,
to his emirs took to say
tot coreciez e tot plein d'ire:
all angered and all full of-wrath
«E u est ore ma maisnee,
And where is now my household
la vanteresse, l'enragiee?
the boastful the-raging
Or chevalche cristientez
Now rides Christendom
par Sulie a ses volentez,
through Syria at its wills
si ne trove qui la retorge.
so not finds who it turns-back
Ore ne sai quel part jo turge.
Now not I-know what way I may-turn
Ou sunt ore les granz manaces,
Where are now the great threats

les cops d'espees e de maces
the blows of-swords and of maces
que se vantouent qu'il fereient
which themselves boasted that-they would-make
quant a l'estor venu sereient?
when to the-fight come they-would-be
Ou sunt les riches començailles
Where are the rich beginnings
des granz osz e des granz batailles?
of-the great hosts and of-the great battles
Ou sunt les granz desconfitures
Where are the great defeats
que l'om trove enz es escriptures
which one finds in in-the writings
que notre ancesur i ont feites,
which our ancestors there have made
que tote jor nus sunt retraites,
which all day to-us are told
qu'il suelent sor cristiens faire?
which-they are-wont upon Christians to-make
Malement vait icest affaire,
Badly goes this affair
car or sumes nos la curaille
for now are we the offal
del mont en ost et en bataille;
of-the world in host and in battle
e quant envers cels qui ainz furent,
and when toward those who before were
riens ne valons, e il valurent.»
anything not we-are-worth and they were-worth

Li admirals des Sarazins
The emirs of-the Saracens
oirent que Salahadins
heard that Saladin
les ot blamé en tel maniere
them had blamed in such manner
c'onques nus n'en leva la chiere
that-ever anyone not-thereof raised the face
fors uns, Sanguis de Halabi,
except one Sanguis of Aleppo
qui s'aficha sor l'arabi,
who himself-set upon the-Arabian
si dist: «Dreiz soldans, or m'oez.
so said Right sultan now me-hear
Mult nos avez estotoiez
Much us you-have insulted
vilainement e trop blasmez;
villainously and too-much blamed
mais por quei nus mesaamez
but for what us you-dislike
si vos ne savez l'achaison?
if you not know the-cause
Vos n'i guardez pas a raison;
You not-there look at-all to reason
car ne remaint pas por combatre,
for not remains at-all for fighting
ne por hardiement embatre,
nor for boldly rushing

ne por traire ne por lancier
nor for shooting nor for throwing
as Frans al fer et a l'acier,
at-the Franks at-the iron and at the-steel
ne por lor granz cops endurer:
nor for their great blows enduring
mais riens ne puet a els durer,
but anything not can against them last
car il ont tantes armeures,
for they have so-many armors
si forz, si tenanz, si seures
so strong so holding so sure
dont il sunt armé en tel guise
wherewith they are armed in such guise
que plus qu'en une piere bise
that more than-on a stone gray
ne poons en els rien forfaire;
not we-can on them anything harm
e qui a tel gent a a faire,
and who with such folk has to do
coment se puet il conseiller?
how himself can he counsel
Encor fait plus a merveiller
Still it-makes more to marvel
d'on Franc qui est en lor compaine,
of-a Frank who is in their company
qui noz genz ocist e mahaine;
who our folk kills and maims
onques mes nul tel ne veimes:
ever more any such not we-saw

toz jorz iert il devant meismes;
all days was he before himself
a toz besoinz est il trovez
at all needs is he found
com bon chevalier esprovez.
as good knight proved
C'est cist qui des noz feit esart;
That-is this-one who of-the ours makes clearing
si l'apelent melec Richart,
so him-they-call melec Richard
e tel melec deit tenir terre
and such melec ought hold land
e aveir despendre e conquerre.»
and wealth spend and conquer
Salahadins en itel ire
Saladin in such wrath
com vos m'avez ci oi dire
as you me-have here heard say
s'apela Safadin son frere,
so-be-called Saphadin his brother
si dist: «Ore voil qu'il i pere
so said Now I-wish that-it there appear
com jo ai en mes genz grant fiance.
how I have in my folk great trust
Montez e alez sanz dotance,
Mount and go without doubt
feites mei Eschalone abatre:
make me Ascalon strike-down
nos n'avoms mestier de combatre;
we not-have need of fighting

abatez la citié de Guadres,
strike-down the city of Gaza
e seit debrisiee com madres;
and be broken as mazers
mais le Daron faites tenir,
but the Daron make hold
par ont mes genz peussent venir;
by where my folk could come
abatez mei la Gualatie,
strike-down me the Galatie
que Franc n'i facent aatie;
that Franks not-there make challenge
faites abatre le Fier,
make strike-down the Fier
qu'il ne s'i peussent alier;
that-they not themselves-there could ally
abatez mei la Blanche Guarde,
strike-down me the Blanche Garde
que nos n'aioms par dela guarde;
that we not-may-have by beyond fear
abatez Jaffe e cel mult bien,
strike-down Jaffa and that very well
Casel des Plains, Casel Maien;
Casal of-the Plains Casal Maen
abatez moi Seint Jorge, Rames,
strike-down me Saint George Ramla
la grant citié que nos trovames,
the great city which we found
Bel Mont de la montaine en halt,
Bel Mont of the mountain on high

le Thoron, le Chastel Ernald
the Toron the Castle Arnald
et Bel Veeir e Mirabel;
and Bel Voir and Mirabel
abatez le, car mei est bel,
strike-down it for to-me is fair
e les chastels de la montaine,
and the castles of the mountain
que ja un entier ne remaine,
that ever one whole not remain
chastel ne casel ne cité,
castle nor casal nor city
que tut ne seit agraventé,
that all not be razed
fors le Crac e Jerusalem:
except the Krak and Jerusalem
si le voil, si le fera l'em.»
so it I-wish so it will-do one
Salahadins l'ad comandé,
Saladin it-has commanded
e cil ad congié demandé,
and he has leave asked
qui bien set son comandement.
who well knows his commandment
Lors parla un Turc hautement
Then spoke a Turk highly
qui Caisac esteit nomez,
who Kaysac was named
halt Sarazin e renomez.
high Saracen and renowned

Cil dist a Salahadin: «Sire,
He said to Saladin Lord
nus hom ne deit tant creire s'ire
any man not ought so-much believe his-wrath
ne son maltalent com vos faites.
nor his ill-will as you do
Mais enveiez ore vos guaites
But send now your watches
e voz espies e vos guardes
and your spies and your guards
es pleins de Rames es anguardes,
in-the plains of Ramla in-the lookouts
si que quel part que Franc se torgent
so that what way that Franks themselves turn
que les espies ça retorgent,
that the spies here return
e qu'il sachent al retorner
and that-they know at-the returning
quel part lor ost voldra torner:
what way their host will-wish to-turn
e tel tor poreient il faire
and such turn could they make
que bien poreit l'em lor forfaire.
that well could one them harm
Par Mahumet que l'em aore,
By Mahomet whom one adores
l'en deit guarder e tens et hore
one ought watch both time and hour
et achaison de gent blasmer.
and occasion of folk blaming

Ne nos devez mesaamer,
Not us you-ought dislike
car teles sunt les aventures
for such are the adventures
que genz ont granz desconfitures;
that folk have great defeats
si ne larai que jo nel die,
so not I-will-leave that I it say
que si jo ai bone compainie,
that if I have good company
ge cuit les Frans si curt tenir
I think the Franks so short to-hold
qu'il avront ça malveis venir.»
that-they will-have here evil coming
Lors eslurent trente admiralz,
Then they-chose thirty emirs
granz genz e de parage halz;
great folk and of lineage high
chescon ot en sa compainie
each had in his company
bien cinc cenz Turs de gent hardie,
well five hundred Turks of folk bold
que Salahadins fist aler
whom Saladin made go
al flum d'Arsur et avaler,
to-the river of-Arsuf and descend
e tuit i furent e gueterent
and all there were and watched
quant la gent Deu rechevalcherent.
when the folk (of-)God rode-again

L'ost Deu qui s'esteit combatue,
The-host (of-)God which itself-was fought
e qui un poi ot abatue
and which a little had struck-down
des Sarazins la sorquidance,
of-the Saracens the overweening
le tierz jor après sanz dotance
the third day after without doubt
torna d'Arsur tote rengiee
turned from-Arsuf all ranged
par mi la terre laidengee
through midst the land insulted
ou il alouent chevalchant
where they went riding
e la grant honte Deu vengant.
and the great shame (of-)God avenging

Jaffa, and the Counsel over Ascalon

VI

The Templars guard the rear on the march to the river of Arsuf, and the host reaches Jaffa, which the Saracens have thrown down, and camps in the olive grove among the orchards, fed by the fleet from Acre. News comes that Saladin is razing Ascalon, and Geoffrey of Lusignan and William of l'Estanc sail to confirm it. In council Richard argues for saving Ascalon, but the French prevail, and Jaffa is refortified instead. The women come back and sin with them, many pilgrims slip back to Acre, and Richard himself must go there to fetch them and the queens. Riding out to surprise the Turks with too small a household, he falls asleep and is nearly taken; William of Preaux cries in their tongue that he is the king and is led off in his place.

Li Templer icel jor guarderent
The Templars that day guarded
la riere guarde ou il errerent;
the rear guard where they journeyed
car li vilains dit qui guarniz
for the villein says who furnished
est qu'il ne puet estre escharniz.
is that-he not can be mocked
Mais lors por nient se guarnirent, 6915
But then for nothing themselves furnished
car onques Turc le jor ne virent,
for ever Turk the day not they-saw
n'onques a l'ost ne s'aparurent
nor-ever to the-host not themselves-appeared
desque al flum ou noz genz jurent,
until at-the river where our folk lay
ou il les quiderent destraindre;
where they them thought to-constrain

mais ne lor pot a riens ateindre:
but not to-them could at anything reach
assez enchacerent e trestrent,
much they-chased and shot
e neporquant tuit se retrestrent.
and nevertheless all themselves withdrew
E nostre gent se herbergerent
And our folk themselves lodged
sor le flum d'Arsur e logierent;
on the river of-Arsuf and lodged
et al matin la gent menue,
and at-the morning the folk small
qui a grant paine esteit tenue,
which with great pain was held
e li herbergeor s'esmurent,
and the harbingers themselves-moved
si que par tens a Jaffe furent;
so that in time at Jaffa they-were
et Jaffe siet sor la marine;
and Jaffa sits on the shore
mais la cruel gent sarazine
but the cruel folk Saracen
l'aveient ja si abatue
it-had already so struck-down
e si laidee e si fondue
and so ruined and so cast-down
que l'ost dedenz n'i peust estre,
that the-host within not-there could be
ainz se logierent a senestre
rather themselves lodged at left

en une bele olivereie.
in a fair olive-grove
Et long conte por quei fereie?
And long tale for what would-I-make
Mais que treis semaines entieres
But that three weeks entire
trespasserent endemantieres
passed meanwhile
que l'ost fud la d'Acre venue:
that the-host was there from-Acre come
issi iert la chose avenue.
thus was the thing befallen
Devant Jaffe en l'oliveroie,
Before Jaffa in the-olive-grove
en la bele jardineroie,
in the fair garden-ground
la ficha l'ost Deu ses banieres;
there planted the-host (of-)God its banners
* * *
(lacuna)
la furent les guaigneries;
there were the tilled-lands
la aveit tanz reisins e fies,
there was so-many grapes and figs
pomes grenetes, alemandes,
apples grained almonds
tot entor a plentez si grandes,
all around in plenty so great

dont li arbre esteient fichié,
whereof the trees were set
tant en pernouent sanz marchié
so-much thereof they-took without bargain
que l'ost en fud mult sostenue.
that the-host thereby was much sustained
Eht vos l'estorie al port venue:
Behold you the-fleet at-the port come
les nes aloient e veneient
the ships went and came
de Jaffe a Acre e reveneient,
from Jaffa to Acre and came-back
qui aportouent lor vitaille,
which brought their victuals
dont mult pesot a la chenaille.
whereof much grieved to the dog-rabble
Et Salahadins, qui combatre
And Saladin who to-fight
ne s'osoit, fesoit ja abatre
not himself-dared made already strike-down
les murs e les turs d'Escalone.
the walls and the towers of-Ascalon
Un jor, endreit hore de none,
One day right-at hour of nones
eth vos la novele venue
behold you the news come
en l'ost, de povre gent menue
into the-host from poor folk small
qui par nuit s'en iert enfoie,
which by night itself-thence was fled

que Escalone ert ∗∗∗
that Ascalon was (lacuna)
e cerfoie et estonee,
and undermined and shaken
e par desuz estançonee;
and by beneath propped
li alquant a veir le teneient,
the some for true it held
si com les noveles veneient,
so as the news came
li uns a veir, l'autre a mençonge
the ones for true the-other for lie
e l'autre a eschar et a songe,
and the-other for mockery and for dream
que Salahadins tel fieblesce
that Saladin such feebleness
pensast ja por nule destresce
should-think ever for any distress
ne por nule mise d'avoir;
nor for any expense of-wealth
tant que l'en envoia savoir
until that one sent to-know
le rei Richarz od le barnage
the king Richard with the baronage
en une fort galee a nage
in a strong galley by rowing
par danz Jeffrei de Lenzeignan,
by lord Geoffrey of Lusignan
qui por Deu soffri meint ahan,
who for God suffered many-a toil

e par Willame de l'Estanc,
and by William of l'Estanc
un chevalier prodome e franc,
a knight worthy-man and free
e altres genz od els alerent.
and other folk with them went
Devant la citié s'aresterent,
Before the city themselves-halted
tant qu'il sorent certainement
until that-they knew certainly
que l'en l'abateit veirement.
that one it-struck-down truly
Arieres vindrent, sil redistrent;
Back they-came so-it told-again
e li baron conseil en pristrent
and the barons counsel thereof took
saveir mon que il en fereient
to-know indeed what they thereof would-do
e savoir s'il la rescorreient.
and to-know if-they it would-rescue
Devant Jaffe hors de la vile
Before Jaffa outside of the town
fud assemblee la concille;
was assembled the council
la ot paroles departies
there was words divided
e conseilz de plusors parties,
and counsels of several sides
car chescon hom a son corage,
for each man has his heart

ne tuit ne sunt pas d'un eage;
nor all not are at-all of-one age
si voldroit l'uns tel chose faire
so would-wish the-one such thing to-do
ou l'autre avreit trop a refaire.
where the-other would-have too-much to redo
La n'iert mestiers qu'il descordassent,
There not-was need that-they should-disagree
mais que tuit a un s'acordassent.
but that all at one should-agree
Li uns rovoient e disoient
The ones asked and said
que vers Jerusalem iroient,
that toward Jerusalem they-would-go
e li autre se il peussent
and the others if they could
Escalone as Turcs escoussent,
Ascalon from-the Turks should-rescue
car la feist bon receter.
for there would-be good to-shelter
La peussiez oir reter
There could-you hear reproach
les uns as autres lor devises
the ones to-the others their plans
come genz de si granz emprises.
as folk of so great undertakings
Lors parla li reis d'Engletere,
Then spoke the king of-England
qui toz jorz fud nurri en guere,
who all days was nurtured in war

al duc e as Franceis ensemble,
to-the duke and to-the French together
si lor dist: «Seignors, il me semble
so to-them said Lords it to-me seems
que nos avoms divers corages;
that we have different hearts
ço puet torner a granz damages.
this can turn to great harms
Li Turc font Eschalone abatre:
The Turks make Ascalon strike-down
il ne s'osent a nos combatre.
they not themselves-dare with us fight
Alons Eschalone rescorre;
Let-us-go Ascalon to-rescue
tot li mondes i devreit corre,
all the world there ought run
e vis m'est que c'est bien a faire.»
and seeming to-me-is that this-is well to do
Que vos direie d'altre affaire?
What to-you would-I-tell of-other business
Fors que li Franceis respondirent,
Except that the French answered
tels qui puis mult s'en repentirent,
such who after much themselves-thereof repented
que illoc feseit boen sejorner
that there it-made good to-stay
por Jaffe faire ratorner,
for Jaffa to-make restore

e que ço iert li plus cort veiages
and that this would-be the most short journey
a faire lor pelerinages.
to make their pilgrimages
Mais mult malveis conseil donerent,
But much bad counsel they-gave
quant a Eschalone ne alerent;
when to Ascalon not they-went
car se lors l'eussent escosse
for if then they-it-had rescued
la terre fust tote rescusse;
the land would-be all rescued
mais tant parlerent e tant distrent
but so-much they-spoke and so-much they-said
que Jaffe a rafermer enpristrent.
that Jaffa to refortify they-undertook
Quant cele ovre fud craantee,
When this work was granted
eth vos l'ost a Jaffe arestee;
behold you the-host at Jaffa halted
une taille de grant affaire
a levy of great business
coillirent al chastel reffaire:
they-gathered to-the castle remake
les fossez firent redrescier
the ditches they-made straighten-again
e les murs entur adrescier.
and the walls around set-right
Eth vos l'ost illoc a sujor;
Behold you the-host there at rest

eth vos venir de jor en jor
behold you come from day to day
en l'ost le pechié e l'ordure
into the-host the sin and the-filth
e la laidesce e la luxure;
and the ugliness and the lust
car les femmes en l'ost revindrent,
for the women into the-host came-back
qui vilainement se contindrent.
who basely themselves conducted
Es nes venoient et es barges.
In-the ships they-came and in-the barges
Ha! Deu merci! com males targes,
Ah God mercy how bad targes
com mals escuz a reconquerre
how bad shields to reconquer
l'eritage Deu e sa terre,
the-inheritance (of-)God and his land
e com vilment cil s'atornerent
and how vilely those themselves-arrayed
qui as pechiez se retornerent
who to-the sins themselves turned-back
e perdirent par lor oltrage
and lost by their outrage
a faire lor peregrinage!
to make their pilgrimage
Ce fud envers fin de setembre,
This was toward end of September
e ço m'est vis e ço me semble
and this to-me-is seeming and this to-me seems

que Jaffe iert ja auques refaite;
that Jaffa was already somewhat remade
eth vos l'ost hors des jardins traite.
behold you the-host out of-the gardens drawn
Tot environ Seint Abacuc
All around Saint Habakkuk
la se tendirent prince e duc;
there themselves pitched prince and duke
mais mult ert l'ost apeticiee
but much was the-host diminished
de si que ele iert comenciee;
from thus that it was begun
car a Acre s'en retornouent,
for to Acre themselves-thence returned
et es tavernes sujornouent.
and in-the taverns stayed
Et quant li reis sot la peresce
And when the king knew the sloth
des pelerins e la laschesce,
of-the pilgrims and the slackness
par le rei de Jerusalam
by the king of Jerusalem
manda a Acre, ço vit l'am,
sent to Acre this saw one
as pelerins qu'a l'ost venissent
to-the pilgrims that-to the-host they-should-come
e que a Deu covent tenissent;
and that to God covenant they-should-keep

mais pereçusement i vindrent
but slothfully there they-came
por le rei Guion, ainz se tindrent
for the king Guy rather themselves held-back
tant que li reis Richarz meismes,
until that the king Richard himself
quin ot grant paine puis e primes,
who-thereof had great pain after and first
revint a Acre e sermona
came-back to Acre and preached
tant que mult gent en amena,
so-much that many folk thence he-brought
e fist amener les reines
and made bring the queens
e metre en Jaffe e lor meschines,
and put in Jaffa and their maidens
e por les genz faire venir
and for the folk to-make come
covint l'ost illoques tenir
it-behooved the-host there to-hold
pres de deus meis ou sis semaines;
near of two months or six weeks
sin eumes puis des granz peines.
so-thereof we-had after of-the great pains
Quant li reis ot d'Acre jetee
When the king had from-Acre cast
la gent et a l'ost amenee,
the folk and to the-host brought

mult en fud durement creue
much thereby was hard increased
assez plus qu'el n'ert descreue;
enough more than-it was decreased
mais or orez en quele esprove,
but now you-will-hear in what plight
que cil vit qui l'estoire trove,
which he saw who the-history composes
fu l'ost tote a icel termine:
was the-host all at that time
tute deust estre en la mine,
all ought be in the ruin
car quant ost pert son cheventaine
for when host loses its chieftain
en estrange terre lointaine
in foreign land distant
si com est cele de Sulie,
so as is that of Syria
tut se desvoie e desalie.
all itself strays and comes-apart
Gel di por le rei d'Engletere,
I-it say for the king of-England
qui ert alez Sarazins querre
who was gone Saracens to-seek
e guaitier les por els soprendre;
and to-watch them for them to-surprise
mais malement dut l'aguait prendre,
but badly was-to the-ambush take

car trop escharie maisnee
for too sparse household
ot li rois a cele foiee,
had the king at that time
si s'endormi par aventure;
so himself-fell-asleep by chance
e li enemi de nature,
and the enemies by nature
li Sarazin, qui se guaiterent,
the Saracens who themselves watched
erent pres, e tant l'aprismerent
were near and so-much him-approached
qu'a paine a tens fud esveilliez.
that-at pain in time was awakened
Seignors, ne vos esmerveilliez
Lords not you marvel
se li reis se leva en haste;
if the king himself rose in haste
car uns hom sels que tant gent haste
for one man alone whom so-many folk hasten
n'est mie del tot asseur.
not-is at-all of-the all secure
Mais Deus li dona tel eur
But God to-him gave such fortune
qu'il monta e ses genz monterent,
that-he mounted and his folk mounted
cil qu'i en ot, mais trop poi erent.
those that-there thereof was but too few were
E quant li Turc montez les virent,
And when the Turks mounted them saw

li reis chaça e il fuirent
the king chased and they fled
de si qu'a lur enbuschement.
from thus till-to their ambush
Cil desbuchierent durement
These broke-from-ambush hard
e voldrent le rei enbracier;
and wished the king to-embrace
mais il mist main al brant d'acier,
but he put hand to-the sword of-steel
et sist en Fauvel a cele hore.
and sat on Fauvel at that hour
Ja li veneient li Turc sore,
Already to-him came the Turks upon
chescons i voloit la main tendre:
each there wished the hand to-stretch
mais nus n'oseit son cop atendre;
but anyone not-dared his blow to-await
e puet estre que pris l'eussent,
and can be that taken him-they-would-have
si a cele foiz le coneusent,
if at that time him they-had-known
quant uns chevaliers preuz leaus
when a knight worthy loyal
des suens, Guillaumes de Preals,
of-the his William of Preaux
parla, e dist sarrazineis:
spoke and said in-Saracen
«Ge sui melec.» Melec c'est reis.
I am melec Melec this-is king

E li Turc chau pas le saisirent,
And the Turks hot foot him seized
dreit a lor ost mener le firent.
straight to their host lead him they-made
La fud morz Reinier de Maron,
There was dead Reinier of Maron
qui aveit cuer de preu baron,
who had heart of worthy baron
e sis niés qui ot non Gautier,
and his nephew who had name Walter
qui raveit preu cuer et entier;
who had-in-turn worthy heart and whole
Alain e Lucas de l'Estable
Alan and Lucas of l'Estable
i furent mort, qui n'est pas fable.
there were dead which not-is at-all fable
Quant la novele fud seue
When the news was known
* * *
(lacuna)
lié et joant, ço dist li livre.
glad and joyful this says the book
E nient fud de l'aconsivre,
And nothing was of the-overtaking
car de grant air s'en alouent,
for of great force themselves-thence they-went
e Guillame pris en menouent;
and William taken away they-led

sin quidoent la gent haie
so-thereof thought the folk hated
mener le rei, mais ne plot mie
to-lead the king but not pleased at-all
a Dampnedeu, qui en fud guarde.
to Lord-God who thereof was guard
Li Turc erent ja en l'enguarde,
The Turks were already in the-vanguard
qui le rei mener en quiderent,
who the king to-lead thereof thought
e noz genz a l'ost repairierent;
and our folk to the-host returned
mais de Guillame orent grant dote
but for William had great doubt
li reis e la gent de l'ost tote.
the king and the folk of the-host all

The Hamlets Rebuilt, and Saladin's Embassies

VII

The barons beg Richard not to risk himself again, but he keeps fighting the Turks wherever he meets them. Leaving the bishop of Evreux and others to fortify Jaffa, the host camps between the Casal of the Plains and Casal Maen on the vigil of All Saints and rebuilds both while the Turks harass it from Ramla. Squires foraging under the Templars' guard are ambushed by four hundred Turks; the Templars dismount and stand back to back, and Andrew of Chauvigny, then the earls of Saint Pol and Leicester, and finally Richard himself, ride to their rescue. Richard's envoys demand the kingdom of Syria from Saladin; Saphadin beguiles him with offers and presents, until the talks fail over the Krak of Mount Royal.

Quant Dampnedeus par sa franchise
When Lord-God by his nobleness
ot esparnié en itel guise
had spared in such manner
le rei qui l'ost deveit conduire,
the king who the-host was-to lead
lores pristrent plusors a dire,
then took several to say
qui a coregeus le saveient
who for rash him knew
e qui de lui peur aveient:
and who for him fear had
«Sire, por Deu merci, ne faites!
Lord for God mercy not do
Ne vos chaille a feire tels guaites;
Not to-you let-it-matter to do such watches
gardez vos e cristienté.
guard you and Christendom

Bone gent avez a plenté:
Good folk you-have in plenty
n'alez mes sels en tel affaire.
not-go more alone in such business
Quant vos voldrez as Turs forfaire,
When you will-wish to-the Turks to-do-harm
menez od vos grant compainie,
lead with you great company
que en voz mains est nostre vie
for in your hands is our life
ou nostre mort, s'il vos meschiet:
or our death if-it to-you goes-ill
que quant li chief des membres chiet,
for when the head from-the limbs falls
li membre puis mes ne soffisent,
the limbs after more not suffice
ainz faillent sempres e defisent;
rather fail at-once and perish
e tost avient une aventure.»
and soon comes-about a mischance
Assez i mistrent paine e cure
Enough there put pain and care
a chastier l'en meint prodome;
to admonish him-thereof many-a worthy-man
e il toz jorz, ço est la some,
and he all days this is the sum
quant il veeit les assemblees,
when he saw the encounters
dont mult poi li erent emblees,
whereof very few from-him were stolen

assembloit as Turs a meschief,
engaged with-the Turks at mischief
et en veneit si bien a chief
and thereof came so well to end
qu'il en aveit ou mort ou pris
that-he thereof had either dead or taken
e que suens iert li graindre pris;
and that his was the greater prize
e Deus toz jorz des greignors presses
and God all days from-the greater presses
le jetoit hors des genz engresses.
him cast out of-the folk fierce
Quant l'ost se fud aherneschiee
When the-host itself was equipped
a grant force et a grant hachiee,
with great force and with great effort
eth la vos semonse e banie
behold it you summoned and proclaimed
el non deu filz sainte Marie,
in-the name of-the son (of-)saint Mary
que al Casel des Plains ireient,
that to-the Casal of-the Plains they-would-go
e que il le refermereient
and that they it would-refortify
por le chief de l'ost mielz guarder.
for the head of the-host better to-guard
Lors plut al rei a comander
Then pleased to-the king to command

que a Jaffe tels genz remansissent
that at Jaffa such folk should-remain
qui la vile fermer feissent,
who the town fortify should-make
e que le port si bien gardassent
and that the port so well they-should-guard
que nules genz ne s'en alassent
that any folk not themselves-thence should-go
fors marcheant por la vitaille.
except merchants for the victuals
Le evesque d'Evreues sanz faille,
The bishop of-Evreux without fail
li coens de Chaalon oveques,
the count of Chalons with-him
e dan Hue Ribole illoques
and lord Hugh Ribole there
remistrent por icele afaire:
remained for that business
cil firent les ovraines faire.
these made the works do
Eth vos l'ost montee e meue;
Behold you the-host mounted and moved
onc plus bele ne fud veue
ever more fair not was seen
ne plus richement atornee,
nor more richly arrayed
mais petite fud lor jornee.
but small was their day's-march

Entre les deus casels tendirent
Between the two casals they-pitched
lor pavillons e descendirent;
their pavilions and dismounted
si sai de veir par mulz ensaimz
so I-know of true by many signs
que vigilie iert de la toz sainz
that vigil was of the All Saints
quant illoques nos herberjames.
when there we lodged
E l'ost des Turs esteit a Rames:
And the-host of-the Turks was at Ramla
la nos firent les genz haies
there to-us made the folk hated
granz enchalz e granz envaies.
great pursuits and great assaults
Bons quinze jorz ou plus tot plains
Good fifteen days or more all full
fud entre le casel des Plains
was between the casal of-the Plains
nostre ost e le casel Maen,
our host and the casal Maen
que eurent abatu li paen.
which had struck-down the pagans
Le Maen fist le rei refaire
The Maen made the king remake
plus fort qu'il n'esteit al desfaire,
more strong than-it was at-the undoing
e li Templier l'autre refirent;
and the Templars the-other remade

mais li Turc granz presses nos firent.
but the Turks great presses on-us made
Un jor en vint vers l'ost ensemble
One day thereof came toward the-host together
bien mil a cheval, ço me semble.
well thousand on horse this to-me seems
Estes vos nostre ost estormie
Behold you our host stirred-up
come formilliere formie;
as anthill teems
li reis e li autre monterent,
the king and the others mounted
e quant qu'il porent se hasterent,
and as-much as-they could themselves hastened
e li Turc tornerent en fuie:
and the Turks turned in flight
le vif diables les conduie!
the living devil them lead
Car lor cheval si tost aloient,
For their horses so fast went
en quelque sens qu'il s'en tornoient,
in whatever direction that-they themselves-thence turned
que li reis nes pot aconsivre,
that the king not-them could overtake
onc tant ne solt chacer ne siwre:
ever so-much not knew-how to-chase nor follow
e quant il les ot tant seuz
and when he them had so-much followed
et il nes ot aconseuz,
and he not-them had overtaken

e vit Rames a descovert
and saw Ramla in the-open
e l'ost del faus pople colvert,
and the-host of-the false people base
si s'en revint en l'ost ariere,
so himself-thence came-back into the-host back
il e la gent hardie e fiere.
he and the folk bold and proud
Al siste jor de la grant feste,
On-the sixth day of the great feast
de la toz seinz que chescons feste,
of the All Saints that each-one feasts
eissirent de l'ost en forage
went-out from the-host in foraging
li escuier por quere herbage.
the squires for to-seek fodder
A els guarder en cel contemple
To them guard in that time
furent li preu seignor del Temple.
were the worthy lords of-the Temple
Li forrier qui de l'ost partirent
The foragers who from the-host departed
par la contree s'espartirent,
through the country themselves-scattered
qui coveitouent herbe drue,
who coveted grass thick
qui meinte feiz lor fud vendue,
which many-a time to-them was sold

car meinte feiz la compararent
for many-a time it they-paid-for
* * *
(lacuna)
li Templier les foriers garderent;
the Templars the foragers guarded
si com il mains se regarderent,
so as they least themselves looked-about
estes vos lor quatre conreiz,
behold you to-them four companies
des Sarazins od granz desreiz.
of-the Saracens with great disorder
Bien furent quatre cent esmé,
Well were four hundred reckoned
tot a cheval, bien acesmé,
all on horse well equipped
e par devers Bombrac saillirent
and by toward Bombrac leapt
dreit as Templers, sis assaillirent
straight at-the Templars so-them assailed
e enclostrent a la reonde,
and enclosed at the round
car n'a plus viste gent el monde;
for not-there-is more swift folk in-the world
estreitement e cort les tindrent,
tightly and short them they-held
e de plusors parties vindrent.
and from several sides they-came
Quant li Templer si pres les virent,
When the Templars so near them saw

des chevals a pié descendirent;
from-the horses on foot they-dismounted
si firent trop granz vasselages,
so made very great deeds-of-prowess
les vis tornez as genz salvages,
the faces turned to-the folk savage
e les dos chescon a son frere,
and the backs each to his brother
com se il tuit fussent d'un pere.
as if they all were of-one father
Li Sarazin les empresserent
The Saracens them pressed
tant que treis morz nos i laisserent.
so-much that three dead to-us there they-left
La veissiez granz cops doner,
There you-might-have-seen great blows give
la oissiez helmes soner
there you-might-have-heard helmets ring
e de l'acer le feu saillir,
and from the-steel the fire leap
bien deffendre e bien assaillir.
well defend and well assail
Li Turc les quiderent sorprendre:
The Turks them thought to-surprise
la les voleient as mains prendre,
there them wished at-the hands to-take
si estroitement les tenoient,
so tightly them they-held
quant cil qui de nostre ost issoient
when those who from our host went-out

vindrent ferant grant aleure;
came striking great pace
si fud dit por verité pure
so was said for truth pure
que Andriu de Chavignié premiers,
that Andrew of Chauvigny first
sei quinzime de chevaliers,
himself fifteenth of knights
rescust les Templers icele hore;
rescued the Templars that hour
grant aleine vint as Turs sore,
great breath came to-the Turks upon
e le fist mult prousement
and it did very valiantly
e si compaignon ensement,
and his companions likewise
la ot il trop fiere assemblee;
there had it very fierce encounter
mais ne fud mie al rei emblee;
but not was at-all from-the king stolen
ainz faiseit icel jor refaire
rather he-made that day remake
Casel Maen e cel affaire,
Casal Maen and that business
e aveit mandé por deus contes,
and had sent for two counts
qui deivent estre en toz bons contes,
who ought be in all good tales
de Seint Pol e de Leicestre,
of Saint Pol and of Leicester

si comanda li reis a estre
so commanded the king to be
od els Guillame de Caieu,
with them William of Cayeux
qui bien i tint le jor son leu;
who well there held the day his place
si i fud Otes de Transigniees,
so there was Otho of Trazegnies
c'erent genz de haltes lignees.
these-were folk of high lineages
Eth vos la noise e la criee
Behold you the noise and the cry
que li forier orent criee,
which the foragers had cried
e li reis as contes manda
and the king to-the counts sent
ou il lor dist e comanda
where he to-them said and commanded
qu'alassent les Templiers socure,
that-they-should-go the Templars to-succor
e il ireit as armes corre;
and he would-go to-the arms to-run
meintenant as armes correit
at-once to-the arms he-ran
al plus tost qu'il onques poreit.
at-the most soon that-he ever could
Et il erralment chevalcherent;
And they forthwith rode
e si com il i aprismerent,
and so as they there approached

eth lor saillir d'un fluminaire
behold to-them leap from-a riverbed
bien quatre mil de gent contraire,
well four thousand of folk hostile
qui en deus parz se departirent:
who in two parts themselves divided
li un sor les Templiers guenchirent,
the ones upon the Templars swerved
e li autre as barons tornerent;
and the others to-the barons turned
e li baron se conreerent,
and the barons themselves arrayed
e ensemble en conrei se tindrent.
and together in array themselves held
Li Turc aprismerent e vindrent.
The Turks approached and came
Illoc fist li coens de Saint Pol
There made the count of Saint Pol
un giu parti hardi e fol
a game divided bold and mad
al preu conte de Leicestre:
to-the worthy count of Leicester
qu'il assemblast as Turs sor destre
that-he should-engage with-the Turks on right
et il tozjorz le guardereit,
and he always him would-guard
ou sis cors i assemblereit
or his body there would-engage

e il de lui guarde preist
and he of him guard should-take
ou qu'il alast ne qu'il feist.
where that-he should-go nor that-he should-do
E li coens prist le jeu parti:
And the count took the game divided
od sa maisniee s'en parti
with his household himself-thence departed
e se feri grant aleure
and himself struck great pace
es conreiz de la gent oscure,
in-the companies of the folk dark
e asembla od tel ruistesce
and engaged with such violence
que loee fud sa proesce,
that praised was his prowess
e que deus chevaliers recust,
and that two knights he-rescued
qui rescus furent od grant cust;
who rescued were with great cost
et iert li estors ja pleniers
and was the battle already full
quant li reis Richarz li gueriers
when the king Richard the warrior
vint e vit noz genz en la presse
came and saw our folk in the press
de la paene gent engresse;
of the pagan folk fierce
e n'aveit od lui guerres genz,
and not-had with him much folk

mais sis conreiz iert biaus e genz.
but his company was fair and noble
Lors lui comencerent a dire
Then to-him began to say
tels i en aveit: «Par fei, sire,
such there thereof was By faith lord
vos errez a mult grant meschief,
you go at very great mischief
ne ja n'en vendrez vos a chief
nor ever not-thereof will-come you to end
de noz genz qui la sunt rescore;
of our folk who there are to-rescue
e sels les en vient mielz encorre,
and alone them thereof comes better to-come-to-grief
sanz vos, que vos i encurgiez.
without you than-that you there should-come-to-grief
Por ço est bien que vos retorgiez;
For this is well that you should-turn-back
car si a vos vos mescheiet
for if to you you should-befall-ill
e que issi fust escheiet,
and that thus were befallen
cristienté sereit tuee.»
Christendom would-be killed
Li reis ot la culor muee;
The king had the color changed
lors dist: «Quant jos i enveiai
then said When I-them there sent
e que d'aler les i preiai,
and that of-going them there I-prayed

se il i moerent donc sanz moi,
if they there die then without me
donc n'aie ja mes non de rei!»
then not-may-I-have ever more name of king
Es costez al cheval dona
In-the sides to-the horse he-gave
e le frein lui abandona,
and the bridle to-him abandoned
e fud plus joinz que uns esperviers.
and was more gathered than a sparrowhawk
Lors se feri es chevalers,
Then himself struck in-the knights
tres parmi la gent sarazine,
right through the folk Saracen
e les perça de tel ravine
and them pierced with such violence
que se une foldre i fust passee
that if a thunderbolt there were passed
ne fust pas plus lor gent quassee,
not would-be at-all more their folk shattered
e les oltreit e destreigneit,
and them passed-beyond and pressed
e retorneit e rateigneit,
and turned-back and caught-up-again
e trenchoit mains et braz e testes;
and cut hands and arms and heads
e il fueient come bestes,
and they fled like beasts

e mult en i ot des lassez
and many thereof there was of-the exhausted
e de morz e de pris assez;
and of dead and of taken enough
e tant longement les chacierent
and so long them they-chased
e sivirent e enchaucerent
and followed and pursued
que tens fud de la retornee.
that time was of the return
Ensi rala cele jornee.
Thus went-back that day
Endementers qu'il refermoient
Meanwhile that-they refortified
les deus casels qu'il redresçoient,
the two casals which-they set-up-again
e li reis vit l'ost esbaudie
and the king saw the-host emboldened
sor Sarazins que Deus maudie,
upon Saracens whom God curse
lores apela ses messages
then called his messengers
de halz homes e de genz sages,
of high men and of folk wise
sis tramist a Salahadin
so-them sent to Saladin
et a son frere Saffadin,
and to his brother Saphadin

e fist merveilluses demandes
and made marvelous demands
e mult riches, nobles e grandes:
and very rich noble and great
ço iert le riaume de Sulie,
this was the kingdom of Syria
de chief en chief si com il lie,
from end to end so as it lies
e quant qu'al regne aparteneit
and as-much as-to-the realm belonged
quant li reis mesiaus le teneit;
when the king leper it held
e de Babiloine treu
and from Babylon tribute
issi com il l'aveit eu;
so as he it-had had
car tot clamot en heritage
for all he-claimed in inheritance
par le conquest de son lignage.
by the conquest of his lineage
Li messagier le soldan quistrent
The messengers the sultan sought
e lor message mult bien distrent;
and their message very well said
et il lor dist que nu fereit,
and he to-them said that not-it he-would-do
e que li reis le sorquereit,
and that the king it over-asked

e li manda par Saffadin
and to-him sent by Saphadin
son frere, un sage Sarazin,
his brother a wise Saracen
qu'il lui lareit tote la terre
that-he to-him would-leave all the land
de Sulie en pais e sanz guerre
of Syria in peace and without war
des le flum de si qu'a la mer,
from the river from thus till-to the sea
que il n'i poreit riens clamer;
that he not-there could anything claim
mais par tel covent le fereit
but by such covenant it he-would-do
que Eschalone ne refereit
that Ascalon not would-remake
ne cristien ne Sarazin.
neither Christian nor Saracen
Ço li manda par Saffadin;
This to-him sent by Saphadin
mais li rois ne se gardot mie
but the king not himself guarded at-all
de la fause gent enemie,
from the false folk hostile
quil detrioent e teneient
who-him delayed and held
por les chastels qu'il abateient,
for the castles which-they struck-down
e le serveient de losenge:
and him served with flattery

lor acointement mal chief prenge!
their acquaintance bad end may-take
Car Saffadin tant le deçut
For Saphadin so-much him deceived
que li reis ses presenz reçut.
that the king his presents received
Messagier vindrent e alerent
Messengers came and went
qui les presenz al rei porterent,
who the presents to-the king carried
dont il fud blasmé durement
whereof he was blamed hard
et en parla on malement.
and thereof spoke one badly
Mais Saffadins lui fist entendre
But Saphadin to-him made understand
que il voleit a la pais tendre,
that he wished to the peace to-tend
e li reis tost la pais preist,
and the king soon the peace would-have-taken
qui henoree lui feist,
which honored him would-have-made
por eshaucier nostre creance,
for to-exalt our faith
e por ço que li reis de France
and for this that the king of France
s'en iert alé, dont il ot dote,
himself-thence was gone whereof he had doubt
qu'il saveit qu'il ne l'ameit gute.
for-he knew that-he not him-loved at-all

Messagier alerent e vindrent
Messengers went and came
e le rei en parole tindrent,
and the king in talk held
tant qu'il aperçut la traine
until that-he perceived the treachery
de la fause gent sarazine,
of the false folk Saracen
qui trop iert fause e desleial;
which too-much was false and disloyal
e por le Crac de Mont Real
and for the Krak of Mount Royal
que il voleit qu'il abatissent
which he wished that-they should-strike-down
e que issi la pais feissent,
and that thus the peace they-should-make
e por ço qu'il nel voldrent faire
and for this that-they not-it wished to-do
remist la pais par cele affaire.
remained the peace by that business

The Earl of Leicester's Fight

VIII

With peace refused, Richard engages the Turks and shows their heads in the host, proving the presents he took from Saphadin bought nothing. The host rides to Ramla, which Saladin razes as he falls back to the Toron of the Knights, and the rains keep it six weeks at Saint George and Ramla. The earl of Leicester, pursuing beyond a river, is cut off by four hundred Turks and unhorsed after Warin fitz Gerold; Robert of Neubourg gives the earl his horse, and Andrew of Chauvigny's company rescues them, Andrew driving his lance through an emir. Saladin razes the Toron and withdraws to Jerusalem, and the host marches in winter storms to Beit Nuba, the sick carried in litters from Jaffa and murdered on the road.

Quant cele pais ne pot pas estre,
When that peace not could at-all be
eth vos venir destre e senestre
behold you come right and left
les Turs en l'ost granz enchauz faire,
the Turks in the-host great pursuits to-make
car mult nos volsissent forfaire;
for much us they-would-have-wished to-do-harm
e li reis a els assembloit,
and the king with them engaged
e par essample a cels mustroit
and by example to those showed
qui des presenz blasmé l'aveient
who for-the presents blamed him-had
de quei li Turc le deceveient
of what the Turks him deceived

qu'il ne voleit fors liauté
that-he not wished except loyalty
a Deu ne a la cristienté.
to God nor to the Christendom
Plusors feiz les Turs encontra
Several times the Turks he-met
e meinte teste en l'ost mustra,
and many-a head in the-host showed
qu'il en aveit meinte copee,
for-he thereof had many-a cut-off
n'onques l'ost ne fud destorbee
nor-ever the-host not was hindered
por present que il receust;
for present that he received
e la terre recusse eust,
and the land rescued he-would-have
mais teles genz l'en destorbouent
but such folk him-thence hindered
qui sa burse sovent robouent.
who his purse often robbed
Quant li casel furent armé
When the casals were armed
et radrescié e rafermé
and set-up-again and refortified
e li reis i ot mis ses guardes
and the king there had put his guards
qui guaitouent par les anguardes,
who watched through the lookouts

eth vos l'ost criee e semonse
behold you the-host cried and summoned
a l'ore que soleilz resconse;
at the-hour that sun sets
e l'endemain quant il monterent,
and the-next-day when they mounted
lor gent sagement aroterent,
their folk wisely they-ranked
si chevalcherent dreit a Rames;
so rode straight to Ramla
e si tost come nos errames,
and so soon as we journeyed
et Salahadins sot de veir
and Saladin knew of true
que de Rames l'estuet movoir,
that from Ramla him-behooves to-move
a ço qu'il ne s'osoit combatre,
at this that-he not himself-dared fight
si fist tote la vile abatre,
so made all the town strike-down
e s'en torna fuiant premiers
and himself-thence turned fleeing first
dreit al Thoron as Chevalers:
straight to-the Toron of-the Knights
mult se fioit en la montaine.
much himself trusted in the mountain
E l'ost erra par mi la plaine.
And the-host journeyed through midst the plain

Sor les biaus chevals peuz d'orge
On the fair horses fed of-barley
vint en deus jorz entre Seint Jorge
came in two days between Saint George
e Rames; la s'alerent tendre
and Ramla there themselves-went to-pitch
pur plus gent e vitaille atendre.
for more folk and victuals to-await
La reumes granz envaies
There we-had-again great assaults
des enuioses genz haies;
of-the hateful folk hated
et unes granz plues qui plurent
and some great rains which rained
nos delaierent trop e nurent.
us delayed too-much and harmed
Iceles pluies nos chacerent
These rains us chased
tant que nos genz se herbergierent
so-much that our folk themselves lodged
dedenz Saint Jorge e dedenz Rames;
within Saint George and within Ramla
la nos tendimes e lojames,
there we pitched and lodged
e fumes la bien sis semaines
and we-were there well six weeks
a grant meschief et a granz paines.
at great mischief and at great pains

Issi come nus estioms
So as we were
illoc ou nos sujornioms,
there where we stayed
i ot une fiere assemblee,
there was a fierce encounter
qui ne deit pas estre obliee,
which not ought at-all be forgotten
del preu conte de Leicestre
of-the worthy count of Leicester
devers Seint Jorge sor senestre
toward Saint George on left
e des Turs qui illoc esteient,
and of-the Turks who there were
qui sovent pres de l'ost veneient
who often near of the-host came
e faiseient mainte envaie;
and made many-a assault
e li coens a gent escharie
and the count with folk sparse
eissi del ost por els chacier,
went-out from-the host for them to-chase
et el chief ot l'elme d'acier;
and on-the head had the-helmet of-steel
trei chevaler devant alerent,
three knights before went
qui folement se desreerent,
who madly themselves broke-ranks
si poinstrent as Turcs esleissié;
so spurred at-the Turks at-full-tilt

mais tut trei i fussent laissié,
but all three there would-have-been left
quant li coens leissa cheval corre,
when the count let horse run
qui nes velt pas leisser encorre.
who not-them wishes at-all to-let come-to-grief
A plus de cent Turs s'esleissa,
At more than hundred Turks himself-rushed
e tant i poinst qu'il ne cessa
and so-much there spurred that-he not ceased
ainz les ot oltre un flum passez,
before them had beyond a river passed
mais trop i deut poindre d'assez;
but too-much there he-had spur of-enough
car bien quatre cent Turs veneient,
for well four hundred Turks came
chanes et arcs turqueis teneient,
canes and bows Turkish held
si qu'entre lui et l'ost se mistrent
so that-between him and the-host themselves put
e de lui prendre s'entremistrent.
and of him taking themselves-undertook
Ja nos aveient abatu
Already us they-had struck-down
e trop laidi e trop batu
and too-much insulted and too-much beaten
Guarin le filz Gerod a tere.
Warin the son (of-)Gerold to earth
La veissiez fiers cops de guerre,
There you-might-have-seen fierce blows of war

illoc ou danz Guarins chai;
there where lord Warin fell
al conte plus i meschai,
to-the count more there it-went-ill
que après Guarin l'abatirent,
for after Warin him-they-struck-down
sil laiderent mult e batirent.
so-him insulted much and beat
Dreu de Fontenil deu poutrel
Drogo of Fontenil from-the colt
e après Dreu Robert Neel
and after Drogo Robert Neel
rabatirent il en poi d'ore;
struck-down-in-turn they in little of-hour
e tant en vint au conte sore
and so-much thereof came to-the count upon
Turc e Persant e renoié,
Turk and Persian and renegade
qui l'avoient entr'els noié,
who him-had among-them drowned
qu'a poine le porent abatre.
that-at pain him they-could strike-down
La veissiez genz bien combatre;
There you-might-have-seen folk well fight
la fu Henris le filz Nicole
there was Henry the son (of-)Nicholas
ovec le conte a dure eschole,
with the count at hard school

si i fu de Noefbroc Roberz:
so there was of Neubourg Robert
plus dolz franc hom ne jut en berz
more gentle free man not lay in cradle
que cil fist, si ot grant faiture,
than he did so had great stature
e tel proesce e tel nature
and such prowess and such nature
qu'il descendi en la grant presse
that-he dismounted in the great press
de la paene gent engresse,
of the pagan folk fierce
e bailla son cheval au conte
and gave his horse to-the count
si garda sei e lui de honte;
so guarded himself and him from shame
e Raols de Sainte Marie
and Ralph of Sainte Marie
estoit au conte en compaignie;
was to-the count in company
e si ne fust del Bois Ernaus
and if not had-been of-the Bois Ernaus
il li eust esté noaus;
it to-him would-have been worse
Henri de Malloc e Guillames
Henry of Malloc and William
i eurent o lui sor les hiaumes;
there had with him upon the helmets
e o lui fu Saol del Bruel;
and with him was Saol of-the Bruel

ne onques meis ne fu veu d'oel
nor ever more not was seen of-eye
si grant proece, ce me semble,
so great prowess this to-me seems
come cist se tindrent ensemble
as these themselves held together
contre tanz Turs com la avoit;
against so-many Turks as there was
car nul conseil nus n'i savoit
for any counsel anyone not-there knew
coment s'en partireit delivres;
how himself-thence would-depart free
si fud vertet, ço dit li livres,
so was truth this says the book
que li cuens s'iert tant combatuz
that the count himself-was so-much fought
e tant avoit esté batuz
and so-much had been beaten
e si compaignon ensement
and his companions likewise
que li Turc sanz nul tensement
that the Turks without any defense
les avoient pres d'afolez.
them had near of-maimed
Les cols des destriers acolez,
The necks of-the chargers embraced
droit al Thoron les en menoient,
straight to-the Toron them thence they-led
quant de l'ost que il aprismoient
when from the-host which they approached

vindrent ferant grant aleure
came striking great pace
un conroi de la gent seure.
an array of the folk sure
La iert Andreus de Chavignié,
There was Andrew of Chauvigny
e si iert Henris de Graié,
and so was Henry of Gray
e si i iert de Preiaus Pieres,
and so there was of Preaux Peter
bons chevalers e bon poigneres,
good knights and good spurrers
e meint autre home renomé
and many-a other man renowned
qui ne me furent pas nomé.
who not to-me were at-all named
Chescon d'icels en son venir
Each of-these in his coming
fist son Turc a terre flatir.
made his Turk to earth fall-flat
Mais li Turc que Pieres feri,
But the Turk whom Peter struck
cui cors e alme illoc peri,
whose body and soul there perished
esteit si fort a desmesure
was so strong beyond measure
que Pieres i mist paine e cure;
that Peter there put pain and care

mais onc ne s'en sot tant pener
but ever not himself-thereof knew-how so-much to-toil
que l'en peust vif amener,
that him-thence could alive lead
ne il ne tut cil qui o lui erent,
nor he nor all those who with him were
qui a grant paine le tuerent.
who with great pain him killed
Oiez, seignors, estrange juste,
Hear lords strange joust
e tant est proz qui issi juste
and so-much is worthy who thus jousts
com mis sires Andreus josta!
as my lord Andrew jousted
A l'admirad qu'il encontra
To the-emir whom he-met
mist sa glaive par mi le cors,
put his lance through midst the body
si que le fer parut dehors;
so that the iron appeared outside
e l'amiralt en sa venue
and the-emir in his coming
ot sa cane si droit tenue
had his cane so straight held
qu'el braz Andreu entra li fers
that-in-the arms (of-)Andrew entered the iron
si qu'il li brusa en travers,
so that-it to-him broke in across
si feitement lui eschai:
so in-manner to-him it-befell

li admiralz a tant chai.
the emir at that fell
La veissiez riche rescosse,
There you-might-have-seen rich rescue
la aveit meinte cane escusse
there had many-a cane shaken
e maint glaive par hardement.
and many-a lance by boldness
As premerains fust malement
To-the first-ones it-would-have-been badly
se cil ne fussent avenu.
if those not had arrived
La veissiez estal tenu
There you-might-have-seen stand held
del preu conte de Leicestre,
of-the worthy count of Leicester
com il fereit destre e senestre,
how he struck right and left
tant que deus chevals lui ocistrent.
until that two horses to-him they-killed
La furent tels qui nos redistrent
There were such who to-us told-again
c'onc en home de son eage
that-ever in man of his age
ne virent greignur vasselage
not they-saw greater prowess
ne meillor genz senz plus encore
nor better folk without more still
qu'il ot le jor a lui sucore;
that-he had the day to him to-succor

car de l'ost tant en acurut
for from the-host so-many thereof ran-up
que nus des noz n'i encurut:
that anyone of-the ours not-there came-to-grief
rescus furent e repasserent,
rescued they-were and crossed-back
* * *
(lacuna)
sis desconfistrent et perchierent
so-them routed and pierced
e tant longement les chacerent
and so long them they-chased
que par dreit ennui les guerpirent
that by right trouble them they-abandoned
e a lor tentes revertirent.
and to their tents returned
Salahadin sot tot de veir
Saladin knew all of true
e bien le pot aparceveir
and well it could perceive
que nostre gent s'aparillouent,
that our folk themselves-prepared
e cescon jor s'en atornouent,
and each day themselves-thereto arrayed
d'aler vers la seinte citié.
of-going toward the holy city
Des qu'il li fud bien endité
Since that-it to-him was well told

e il solt nostre ost a deus liues
and he knew our host at two leagues
dont il n'aveit mes pais ne triuues,
whereof he not-had more peace nor truces
si nos fist del Thoron abatre
so to-us made from-the Toron strike-down
turs e toreles cinc e quatre,
towers and turrets five and four
e s'en ala, ço conta l'em,
and himself-thence went this told one
fuiant dreit en Jerusalem,
fleeing straight into Jerusalem
e nos leisserent la champaine
and to-us left the plain
li Turc, e pristrent la montaine.
the Turks and took the mountain
Quant l'ost des Turs se fud retraite
When the-host of-the Turks itself was withdrawn
e la nostre se fud atraite,
and the ours itself was drawn-up
eth vos la semonse criee
behold you the summons cried
e la chose si atornee
and the thing so arranged
qu'al pié de la montaine ireient
that-at-the foot of the mountain they-would-go
e que illoc se herbergereient
and that there themselves would-lodge

e atraireient lor vitaille.
and would-bring-up their victuals
Eissi le firent tut a taille.
Thus it they-did all by measure
Lors monterent e chevalcherent
Then they-mounted and rode
e lor batailles adrescierent.
and their battles set-right
Eth les vos devant Bettenuble.
Behold them you before Beit-Nuba
Lores feseit freit tens e nuble
Then made cold weather and cloudy
e granz pluies e granz tempestes
and great rains and great storms
qui mult nos descrurent noz bestes;
which much to-us diminished our beasts
car tant plut la a desmesure
for so-much rained there beyond measure
qu'il n'en iert nombre ne mesure.
that-it not-thereof was number nor measure
Pluie e gresille nos batoient,
Rain and hail us beat
qui noz pavillons abatoient,
which our pavilions struck-down
si que tanz chevals i perdimes
so that so-many horses there we-lost
e al Noel e puis e primes,
and at-the Christmas and after and first

e tant bescuit i destemprot
and so-much biscuit there soaked
si come l'eve le temprot,
so as the-water it soaked
e tanz bacons i porrissouent
and so-many bacons there rotted
des orages quis laidisseient,
from-the storms which-them spoiled
e tanz haubercs i roillerent
and so-many hauberks there rusted
que a paine desroillerent,
that with pain they-unrusted
e tantes robes i porrirent,
and so-many robes there rotted
e tantes genz i desnurirent
and so-many folk there wasted-away
que mult iert lor cors a mesaise;
that much were their bodies at unease
mais mult ierent lor cuers a aise
but much were their hearts at ease
de l'esperance qu'il aveient
from the-hope that-they had
que al sepulcre aler deveient.
that to-the sepulcher go they-were-to
Jerusalem tant coveitouent
Jerusalem so-much they-coveted
que tuit lor vitaille aportouent
that all their victuals brought
a plein por le siege tenir.
in full for the siege to-hold

Lors veissiez en l'ost venir
Then you-might-have-seen into the-host come
tote la gent od grant leesce,
all the folk with great gladness
entalentee de proesce;
eager for prowess
e cil qui malade giseient
and those who sick lay
a Jaffe e la ou il esteient
at Jaffa and there where they were
se feseient mettre en litere,
themselves made put in litter
od ferme pensee e entiere,
with firm thought and whole
e porter en l'ost a granz presses:
and carry into the-host in great presses
la veneient les genz engresses
there came the folk fierce
al chemin ou cil les portouent
to-the road where those them carried
qui en portant les comfortouent,
who in carrying them comforted
sis guaitouent et assailleient
so-them watched and assailed
e tuouent e ocieient.
and killed and slew
Cil esteient verai martyr
Those were true martyrs
qu'il conveneit issi partir
whom-it behooved thus to-depart

de cest siecle en bone creance
from this world in good faith
et en issi ferme esperance
and in so firm hope
com tuit aveient, fol e sage,
as all had mad and wise
de faire illoc pelerinage.
of making there pilgrimage

The First Turn Back from Jerusalem

IX

Joy fills the host at the thought of the Sepulcher, but the Templars, the Hospitallers, and the men of the land warn Richard that the Turks would cut a siege of Jerusalem off from its supplies, and that a city taken would be lost again once the pilgrims went home. On the third day of the new year Richard rides down an ambush near the Casal of the Plains, and twenty Turks are killed or taken. After Epiphany the council turns the host back to refortify Ascalon, and it goes in despair; many French leave in anger for Jaffa, Acre, and Tyre, and after a terrible march by Ibelin the rest find Ascalon in ruins, where storms wreck their supply ships.

A l'ost iert la joie pleniere
At the-host was the joy full
de grant fin e de grant maniere.
of great end and of great manner
La veissiez haubercs roller,
There you-might-have-seen hauberks roll
e as genz les testes croller
and to-the folk the heads shake

e dire: «Deus, la vostre aie!
and say God the your aid
Dame virgine sainte Marie!
Lady virgin saint Mary
Deus, vos peussoms nos aurer
God you may we worship
e gracier e mercier!
and thank and give-thanks
Or verrom nus vostre sepulcre!»
Now shall-see we your sepulcher
La n'aveit home iré ne mucre,
There not-had man wrathful nor sullen
ne en ire ne en tristece:
nor in wrath nor in sadness
par tot aveit joie e leesce,
through all there-was joy and gladness
e par tut tuit s'esjoisseient;
and through all all themselves-rejoiced
par tot comunement diseient:
through all in-common they-said
«Deus, ore alom nos droite voie;
God now go we straight way
la vostre grace nos avoie.»
the your grace us guides
Mais icil mult poi l'esguardoient
But those very little it-regarded
qui le veiage detrioient:
who the journey delayed

ço estient li sage Templier
these were the wise Templars
e li prodome Hospitalier
and the worthy-men Hospitallers
e li Polain, cil de la terre,
and the Pulani those of the land
qui distrent al rei d'Engletere
who said to-the king of-England
a lor avis por verité
at their opinion for truth
que qui asejast la citié
that whoever should-besiege the city
de Jerusalem a cele hore,
of Jerusalem at that hour
Salahadins lor correit sure
Saladin to-them would-run upon
quant noz genz al siege sereient,
when our folk at-the siege would-be
e li Turc al chemin vendreient
and the Turks to-the road would-come
entre la mer et la montaine,
between the sea and the mountain
si alast malement l'ovraine,
so would-go badly the-work
si en itel point la chenaille
if in such point the dog-rabble
tolsissent a l'ost la vitaille;
should-take-away from the-host the victuals

mais or seit qu'il ne la tolsissent
but now be-it that-they not it should-take-away
e que lores mal n'i feissent
and that then harm not-there they-should-do
e seit que la citié fust prise,
and be-it that the city were taken
si fust perilluse l'emprise,
so would-be perilous the-undertaking
si tost avant ne la publasent
if soon before not it should-people
de tel gent que i demorasent;
with such folk who there should-remain
car tot errant e fol e sage
for all at-once and mad and wise
feissent lor pelerinage
would-make their pilgrimage
e rallassent en lor pais,
and would-go-back into their country
la ou chescons iert estais,
there where each-one was established
si refust la terre perdue,
so would-be-again the land lost
quant la gent se fust espandue.
when the folk itself were spread
Tier jor d'an noef, la matinee,
Third day of-year new the morning
esteit une ovre destinee:
was a work destined
Sarazins, les laides genz brunes,
Saracens the ugly folk brown

sor le Casel des Plains as dunes
upon the Casal of-the Plains at-the dunes
le seir devant ja se bucherent,
the evening before already themselves hid
e tote nuit illoc guaiterent
and all night there watched
desqu'al matin que il saillirent
until-the morning that they leapt
al chemin de l'ost, ou il virent
to-the road of the-host where they saw
deus serjanz qui i trespasserent,
two sergeants who there passed
* * *
(lacuna)
tant que tut furent detrenchié;
until that all were cut-to-pieces
mais Deus volt qu'il fusent vengié,
but God wished that-they should-be avenged
car le rei d'Engletere aveit,
for the king of-England had
qui cel enbuchement saveit,
who that ambush knew
por ço al Casel des Plains geu,
for this at-the Casal of-the Plains lain
qu'il ot l'aguait des Turs seu.
for-he had the-ambush of-the Turks known
La fu Jefrei de Lencignan.
There was Geoffrey of Lusignan
Ço iert li tier jor de novel an
This was the third day of new year

qu'illoc leisserent cheval cure,
that-there they-let horse run
les serjanz quidouent rescore;
the sergeants they-thought to-rescue
mais mort e detrenchié esteient,
but dead and cut-to-pieces they-were
e li Turc, qui bien conisseient
and the Turks who well knew
le rei Richart e sa baniere
the king Richard and his banner
e sa vistesce e sa maniere,
and his swiftness and his manner
les destornez d'illoc partirent,
the turned-aside from-there departed
bien quatre vinz, qui s'en partirent
well four score who themselves-thence departed
e vers Mirabel s'en alerent;
and toward Mirabel themselves-thence went
e li autre adonc s'en tornerent.
and the others then themselves-thence turned
La en ot set que morz que pris,
There thereof were seven what dead what taken
e li reis son cheval de pris
and the king his horse of worth
ala des esperons ferant
went with-the spurs striking
a quatre vint Turs qui fuiant
at four score Turks who fleeing

s'en alouent vers Mirabel,
themselves-thence went toward Mirabel
e sist icel jor sor Fauvel,
and sat that day upon Fauvel
quil portot de si grant ravine
which-him carried with so great violence
qu'il ateinst la gent sarazine
that-he overtook the folk Saracen
si que einz que ses genz venissent
so that before that his folk should-come
ne c'onques a lui se tenissent
nor that-ever to him themselves should-hold
en ot il ja dous destroissiez
thereof had he already two destroyed
e des chevals morz trebuchiez;
and of-the horses dead tumbled
e si l'enchalz fust mielz seu
and if the-pursuit had-been better followed
plus en i eust retenu;
more thereof there he-would-have retained
e neporquant vint en retindrent
and nevertheless twenty thereof they-retained
que morz que pris, puis en revindrent.
what dead what taken then thence they-came-back

Après la feste la Tiffaine,
After the feast (of-)the Epiphany
li halt home e li chevetaine
the high men and the chieftains
a un concile s'asemblerent,
at a council themselves-assembled

e as sages genz demanderent
and to-the wise folk asked
qui de la terre né esteient
who of the land born were
saver mon que il loereient
to-know indeed what they would-advise
de aler ariere ou avant.
of going back or forward
Cil respondirent tut devant,
Those answered all before
et l'Ospital et cil del Temple,
and the-Hospital and those of-the Temple
que, a lor los, en cel contemple
that by their advice in that time
vers Jerusalem pas n'ireient,
toward Jerusalem at-all not-would-go
mais Escalone fermereient,
but Ascalon would-fortify
se il les en voleient creire,
if they them thereof wished to-believe
por guarder le passage e l'eire
for to-guard the passage and the-way
as Sarazins qui trespassouent,
to-the Saracens who passed
qui de Babiloine aportouent
who from Babylon brought
la vitaille en Jerusalem;
the victuals into Jerusalem
e por ço lors esgarda l'em
and for this then decided one

qu'a Escalone returreient
that-to Ascalon they-would-return
e que il la refermereient.
and that they it would-refortify
Quant la novele fud seue,
When the news was known
descoverte e aconseue,
uncovered and found-out
que l'ost retornereit ariere
that the-host would-return back
(mais n'est mie dit en deriere),
but not-is at-all said in behind
estes vos l'ost tant desheitiee,
behold you the-host so dejected
qui de errer iert si enhaitiee,
which of journeying was so eager
que onques puis que Deus fist le siecle
that ever since that God made the world
ne fud veue si tenicle
not was seen so gloomy
ne si mate ne si pensive
nor so checkmated nor so pensive
ne si troble ne si baive
nor so troubled nor so dismayed
ne si plaine de grant tristesce;
nor so full of great sadness
car nient fud de la leesce
for nothing was of the gladness

que devant ço eu aveient,
which before this had they-had
quant al sepulcre aler deveient,
when to-the sepulcher go they-were-to
envers la tristesce qu'il eurent;
beside the sadness that-they had
si i ot tels qui pas ne s'en turent,
so there were such who at-all not themselves-thereof were-silent
einz maldiseient cele atente
rather cursed that waiting
e que onques virent tendu tente;
and that ever they-saw pitched tent
mais s'il seussent la destresce
but if-they had-known the distress
e le torment e la fieblesce
and the torment and the feebleness
qui en Jerusalem esteit
which in Jerusalem was
des Turs, a qui trop mesesteit
of-the Turks to whom too-much went-ill
de la neif qui ert es montaines,
of the snow which was in-the mountains
qui ocieit les granz compaines,
which killed the great companies
lor chevals e lor autres bestes,
their horses and their other beasts
qui fu si veirs com vos ci estes,
which was so true as you here are

qui seust bien lor mesestances
who had-known well their misfortunes
de lor cors e de lor sustances ***
of their bodies and of their substance (lacuna)
que li Turc a icele emprise
that the Turks at that enterprise
fussent mort e la citié prise.
would-have-been dead and the city taken
Ço fud a feste saint Hilaire
This was at feast (of-)saint Hilary
que tant ot l'ost eu contraire
that so-much had the-host had adversity
e dehet por la retornee.
and grief for the return
Chescons maldiseit la jornee
Each-one cursed the day
qu'il viveit e qu'il esteit nez,
that-he lived and that-he was born
quant d'iloc s'en iert retornez.
when from-there himself-thence was returned
Eth vos gent trop desconseillee
Behold you folk too-much at-a-loss
e trop penee e travaillee.
and too-much pained and toiled
De lor vitailles reporter
Of their victuals carrying-back
ne se saveient comforter;
not themselves knew-how to-comfort

car totes lor chevalcheures
for all their mounts
esteient de si granz freidures
were from so great colds
e des pluies afebloiees
and from-the rains enfeebled
e des fievres trop empoirees;
and from-the fevers too-much worsened
e quant la vitaille chargouent
and when the victuals they-loaded
e li somier le tai marchouent,
and the pack-horses the mud trod
a genoilz a terre cheeient,
on knees to earth they-fell
e li home se maudiseient
and the men themselves cursed
e comandouent a diables.
and commended to devils
Seignors, nel tenez mie a fables
Lords not-it hold at-all for fables
que onques bone gent eslite
that ever good folk chosen
veist l'em mes si descomfite.
saw one more so discomfited
E des malades genz menues,
And of-the sick folk small
qui d'enferté furent tenues
who of-infirmity were held
e trop erent mesaaisees,
and too-much were ill-at-ease

i eust mult cel jor leissees,
there would-have much that day left
si ne fust le rei de Engletere,
if not had-been the king of England
qui fist par tot cerchier e quere
who made through all search and seek
tant que toz les en aporterent.
until that all them thence they-brought
Tuit d'iloc bataille tornerent. 7840
All from-there battle turned
A Rames fumes la jornee
At Ramla we-were the day
le jor de cele retornee.
the day of that return
A Rames fud l'ost desheitiee,
At Ramla was the-host dejected
dont j'ai la parole traitiee,
whereof I-have the word treated
e par le deshet que il aveient, 7845
and by the grief that they had
que greinur aver ne poeient,
that greater to-have not they-could
fud tote l'ost desaloiee
was all the-host scattered
lores a icele foiee;
then at that time
car mult des Franceis s'en partirent
for many of-the French themselves-thence departed
par mal talent e s'espartirent: 7850
by ill will and themselves-scattered

li un a Jaffe s'en alerent
the ones to Jaffa themselves-thence went
e une piece i sujornerent;
and a while there stayed
e li alquant a Acre ariere,
and the some to Acre back
ou la vitaille n'iert pas chiere;
where the victuals not-was at-all dear
e li autre a Sur al marchis,
and the others to Tyre to-the marquis
qui mult les en aveit requis;
who much them thereof had asked
li autre od le duc de Borgoine
the others with the duke of Burgundy
dreit de coruz e de vergoine
straight of wrath and of shame
tornerent au casel des Plains;
turned to-the casal of-the Plains
si i furent huit jorz tot plains.
so there were eight days all full
E li reis e l'ost coresciee,
And the king and the-host angered
qui mult esteit apeticiee,
which much was diminished
e li quens Henri de Champaine
and the count Henry of Champagne
sis niés, e cil de sa compaine,
his nephew and those of his company

a Ibelin dreit s'en alerent;
to Ibelin straight themselves-thence went
mais si laides voies troverent
but so ugly ways they-found
al seir quant vint al herbergier
at-the evening when came to-the lodging
qu'il n'aveit en els que gregier.
that-it not-had in them but to-grieve
A Ibelin jut l'ost pensive
At Ibelin lay the-host pensive
e plus mate que rien que vive;
and more checkmated than thing that lives
et al main ainz soleil levant
and at-the morning before sun rising
s'en issirent cil qui devant
themselves-thence went-out those who before
aloent por les places prendre.
went for the places to-take
Lor pavillons firent destendre
Their pavilions they-made unpitch
e chevalcha l'ost tote armee;
and rode the-host all armed
mais ja meis de pior jornee
but ever more of worse day
n'iert conté par home vivant,
not-will-be told by man living
car nient fud del jor devant
for nothing was of-the day before

avers celui que il errerent;
beside that-one which they journeyed
car tanz mals pas i trespasserent
for so-many bad passes there they-passed
que lor vitailles i perdirent
that their victuals there they-lost
par les somiers qui lor chairent.
by the pack-horses which to-them fell
Issi velt Deus, quis esprova
Thus wishes God who-them tested
e qui a force lor prova
and who by force to-them proved
que qui por lui n'est a mesaise
that who for him not-is at unease
ne deit pas o lui estre a aise.
not ought at-all with him be at ease
Estes les vos a Eschalone
Behold them you at Ascalon
venir entre midi e none;
come between noon and nones
si la troverent si fondue
so it they-found so ruined
e tresbuchiee e abatue,
and tumbled and struck-down
quant sor l'abateiz monterent,
when upon the-rubble they-mounted
qu'a si grant martire i entrerent,
that-with so great martyrdom there they-entered

au fort tens qu'il orent le jor,
in-the hard weather that-they had the day
que il n'i ot nul de sejor
that it not-there had any of stay
n'eust talent e volenté;
not-had desire and will
mais puis en eurent a plenté.
but after thereof they-had in plenty
Escalone siet sor la mer
Ascalon sits upon the sea
de Grece, issi l'oi nomer.
of Greece thus it-I-heard name
N'onques ne vi a ma devise
Nor-ever not saw-I to my judgment
nesune citié mielz assise,
any city better placed
s'il i eust port ou entree,
if-it there had port or entry
car trop i ad bone contree;
for exceedingly there is good country
mais la mer est si turmentuse
but the sea is so stormy
illoc endreit e perilluse
there right and perilous
que nuls veissels n'i puet durer;
that any vessel not-there can last
e por ço covint endurer
and for this behooved to-endure

la a noz genz tel mesestance
there to our folk such distress
que onques uit jorz sanz dotance
that ever eight days without doubt
par mer n'i pot veissel venir
by sea not-there could vessel come
de vitaille a l'ost sustenir,
of victuals to the-host to-sustain
ne onques de rien n'i gusterent
nor ever of anything not-there they-tasted
fors de ço qu'il i aporterent
except of this that-they there brought
por l'orage e por le tempeste;
for the-storm and for the tempest
ne par tere ne hom ne beste
nor by land nor man nor beast
ne s'i osouent esmovoir,
not themselves-there dared stir
ne ne se poeient movoir
nor not themselves could move
por la cruel gent sarazine,
for the cruel folk Saracen
tant que de Jaffe la marine
until that from Jaffa the shore
par un bel tens lor vint vitalle.
by a fair weather to-them came victuals
Puis recomença la bataille
Then began-again the battle

e la tempeste en mer si grande
and the tempest at sea so great
que trop encherri la viande;
that too-much grew-dear the food
car les barges e les gualees
for the barges and the galleys
qui por viande erent alees
which for food were gone
furent en cel tens depeciees, 7925
were in that time broken-up
e li plus de lor genz neiees;
and the most of their folk drowned
e totes noz beles enekes
and all our fair snekkes
furent depeciees ovecques,
were broken-up with-them
que li reis i fist puis deffaire,
which the king there made after undo
dont il fist ses longes nes faire 7930
whereof he made his long ships make
en quei il se quida venir;
in which he himself thought to-come
mais ço ne pot pas avenir.
but this not could at-all happen

Ascalon Rebuilt

x

Saladin dismisses his emirs until May, and the Turks depart lamenting their kin lost in Syria and blaming him for those he left to die at Acre. At Candlemas Richard calls the French to Ascalon, and they come on condition they may go at Easter. The host rebuilds Ascalon, and the poverty of the barons does not stop knights, sergeants, and squires from passing the stones hand to hand. Ambroise tells the old story of the city's fifty-three towers, five of them named, and of the sons of Ham who founded it. Richard pays for three parts of the work, and the French later undo it by leaving. When Saladin sends a thousand Christian captives toward Babylon, Richard, riding out to see the Daron, routs their guards and frees them.

Salahadins par ses espies
Saladin by his spies
sot bien que noz genz departies
knew well that our folk departed
s'esteient a val la marine.
themselves-were to below the shore
Lors dist a sa gent sarazine
Then said to his folk Saracen
que en lor contrees s'en alassent
that into their countries themselves-thence they-should-go
e desque a may sejornassent,
and until to May should-stay
qu'il refust tens de josteier.
that-it should-be-again time of jousting
Cil ne se firent pas proier,
Those not themselves made at-all pray
ainz s'en alerent volenters,
rather themselves-thence went willingly

qui aveient quatre anz entiers
who had four years entire
a meschief en Sulie esté,
at mischief in Syria been
e meint chat soffert en l'esté
and many-a heat suffered in the-summer
e en l'yvern meinte freidure,
and in the-winter many-a cold
qui point n'afiert a lor nature,
which at-all not-befits to their nature
que maint en i ot fait remaindre.
which many-a-one thereof there had made remain
La oisiez tanz Turs complaindre,
There you-might-have-heard so-many Turks complain
tanz admiralz, tanz Turs puissanz,
so-many emirs so-many Turks powerful
e tanz Cordins e tanz Persanz,
and so-many Kurds and so-many Persians
e tanz genz de luintaines terres,
and so-many folk from distant lands
qui tantes foiz en tantes guerres
who so-many times in so-many wars
aveient esté sanz rien perdre,
had been without anything losing
qu'au partir veissiez esperdre
that-at-the parting you-might-have-seen be-distraught
de la grant perte e del damage
from the great loss and from-the damage
dont chescon plaigneit son linage,
whereof each-one lamented his lineage

qu'il aveit perdu en Sulie!
which-he had lost in Syria
Ne onques mais rien si haie
Nor ever more thing so hated
ne fud come Salahadins
not was as Saladin
ne tant blasmé des Sarazins
nor so-much blamed by-the Saracens
por les Turs qu'il leissa encure
for the Turks whom-he left come-to-grief
sanz delivrer e sanz sucure
without delivering and without succoring
devant Acre, ou tant en perirent.
before Acre where so-many thereof perished
A tant les ostz s'en departirent
At that the hosts themselves-thence departed
fors la gent al soldan demaine,
except the folk of-the sultan own
qui esteient de son demaine.
who were of his demesne
Ço fud entur la Chandelor
This was around the Candlemas
que de nostre ost e de la lor
that from our host and from the theirs
se furent les genz departies
themselves were the folk departed
plusors sens e plusors parties.
several directions and several sides
Lors manda li reis as Franceis,
Then sent the king to-the French

qui erent departi ainceis,
who were departed before
qu'a Escalone s'en venissent,
that-to Ascalon themselves-thence they-should-come
e que tot a un se tenissent
and that all at one themselves should-hold
e que a lor conseil fust veu
and that by their counsel should-be seen
e conseillé e porveu
and counseled and provided
saver mon quel part tornereient
to-know indeed which way they-would-turn
e coment il se contendreient;
and how they themselves would-conduct
car mielz sereit qu'ensemble alasent
for better would-be that-together they-should-go
que par pechié se descordassent.
than-that by sin themselves should-disagree
E il manderent qu'il vendreient
And they sent-word that-they would-come
et que ovecques lui tendreient
and that with him would-hold
desque la Pasche sulement,
until the Easter only
e par itel devisement
and by such agreement
que se lores aler volsisent
that if then to-go they-should-wish
e que en conseil le preissent,
and that in counsel it they-should-take

que son conduit lor baillereit
that his safe-conduct to-them he-would-give
e que conduire les fereit
and that conduct them he-would-make
a aler s'en tot asseur
to go themselves-thence all secure
par terre a Acre ou a Sur;
by land to Acre or to Tyre
e li reis le lor otreia
and the king it to-them granted
e fist quant que chescons proia.
and did as-much as each-one prayed
Eht vos l'ost a un repairee
Behold you the-host at one returned
e la joie mult esclairee.
and the joy much brightened
Quant l'ost fud issi faitement
When the-host was so in-manner
ensemble a un acordement
together at one accord
a Escalone rasemblee,
at Ascalon reassembled
qui puis en fud desasemblee,
which after thereof was disassembled
tuit ensemble illoc sejornerent.
all together there sojourned
Lors porvirent e atornerent
Then they-provided and arranged
que la citié refermereient;
that the city they-would-refortify

mais li baron si povre esteient
but the barons so poor were
qui illoc eurent sujorné
who there had stayed
puis qu'il esteient retorné
since that-they were returned
que de plusors iert la poverte
that of several was the poverty
si seue e si descoverte
so known and so uncovered
que rien vivant ne la seust
that thing living not it should-know
que trop grant pitié n'en eust.
that too great pity not-thereof should-have
Neporquant tut a l'ovre alerent,
Nevertheless all to the-work went
e le fondement delurerent
and the foundation cleared
d'one porte, ou trestut ovrouent,
of-a gate where all-together worked
e si que il s'esmerveillouent
and so that they themselves-marveled
del grant espleit que il fesouent.
at-the great progress that they made
De main a main s'entretenouent
From hand to hand each-other-held
les pieres li bon chevalier,
the stones the good knights
li serjant e li escuier:
the sergeants and the squires

tuit i ovrouent sanz delai;
all there worked without delay
tant i venoient clerc et lai
so-many there came clerk and lay
que en brief tens mult espleterent;
that in brief time much they-progressed
e donc après si enveierent
and then after so sent
por les maçons a l'ovre faire
for the masons to the-work make
qui grant tens costa a parfaire.
which great time cost to complete
En Escalone aveit eues,
In Ascalon there-had been
qui totes esteient fundues,
which all were ruined
cinquante treis turs forz e beles,
fifty three towers strong and fair
estre les petites roeles;
besides the small turrets
sin i ot cinc par nom nomees
so-thereof there were five by name named
après ço qu'els furent fundees;
after this that-they were founded
si oiez primes quis fonderent,
so hear first who-them founded
issi come cil nos conterent
so as those to-us told
qui saveient la verité,
who knew the truth

que al viel tens d'antiquité
that in-the old time of-antiquity
regna uns hom, Cham iert nomez,
reigned a man Ham was named
haut e puissant e renomez:
high and powerful and renowned
filz Noé fu qui l'arche ot faite,
son (of-)Noah was who the-ark had made
par qui tote rien fud retraite;
by whom all thing was drawn-back
e icil Cham si engendra,
and that Ham so begot
ço puet dire quil retendra,
this can say who-it will-retain
trente deus filz qui puis regnerent
thirty two sons who after reigned
e qui Escalone fonderent;
and who Ascalon founded
e icil filz si enveierent
and those sons so sent
par les terres qu'il justiserent,
through the lands which-they ruled
par les citiez e par les burs,
through the cities and through the towns
quere aie a feire les turs;
to-seek aid to make the towers
si dient que les dameiseles
so they-say that the damsels
fonderent la tur des puceles;
founded the tower of-the maidens

e la tur des escuz fonderent
and the tower of-the shields founded
li chevalier qui al tens erent;
the knights who in-the time were
la tur del sanc des forfetures
the tower of-the blood of-the forfeits
firent e des entrepresures;
they-made and of-the undertakings
e la tur des admiralz firent
and the tower of-the emirs made
li admirail e establirent;
the emirs and established
e Bedoin firent la tur,
and Bedouins made the tower
forte, riche, de grant valor.
strong rich of great worth
Celes cinc turs tels nons aveient
Those five towers such names had
e li ditor tant en saveient;
and the tellers so-much thereof knew
e l'autre gent solonc qu'il erent
and the-other folk according that-they were
les autres ovraines fonderent.
the other works founded
Quant li maçon furent venu,
When the masons were come
a l'ovre furent retenu.
to the-work were retained

Li reis entra premerement
The king entered first
a efforz enterinement,
with effort wholly
e li haut home meintenant;
and the high men at-once
chescon en prist son avenant.
each-one thereof took his share
La ou les autres i faillouent,
There where the others there failed
ou li baron rien ne feissouent,
where the barons anything not did
e li reis ovrer i feseit
and the king work there made
e comenceit e parfeseit;
and began and completed
e quant li baron se laschouent
and when the barons themselves slackened
d'ovrer e il n'i porveouent,
from-working and they not-there provided
e li reis lor feseit porter
and the king to-them made carry
del suen a els racomforter;
of-the his to them comfort
e tant i mist e despendi,
and so-much there he-put and spent
issi come l'en entendi,
so as one understood

que des treis parz de la citié
that of-the three parts of the city
fud le cust del suen aquité.
was the cost of-the his paid
Par le rei fud la citié faite,
By the king was the city made
e par lui refud el deffaite
and by him was-in-turn it undone
des Franceis qui se deffaillirent,
by-the French who themselves failed
quant il e sa prod gent saillirent
when he and his worthy folk leapt
a Jaffe en mer de sa gualee:
at Jaffa into sea from his galley
la fud sa proesce esprovee,
there was his prowess proved
qu'en liu e en tens mosterons,
which-in place and in time we-shall-show
e si bien nos i proverons
and so well us there we-shall-prove
que ja solonc nostre memoire
that ever according-to our memory
d'on mot n'en mentira l'estoire,
of-a word not-thereof will-lie the-history
* * *
(lacuna)
si me doinst Dampnedeu sa gloire.
so to-me may-give Lord-God his glory

Oiez une estrange aventure
Hear a strange adventure
qui bien deit estre en escripture,
which well ought be in writing
e dreite miracle sanz dote.
and right miracle without doubt
Salahadins en une rote
Saladin in a troop
a Babiloine en enveeit,
to Babylon thence sent
que sa maisnee i comveiet,
which his household there convoyed
mil de noz cheitifs cristiens;
thousand of our captive Christians
Frans i aveit e Suliens.
Franks there were and Syrians
Ja esteient jusqu'al Daron;
Already they-were as-far-as-the Daron
mais Dampnedeu qui Lazaron
but Lord-God who Lazarus
resuscita de mort a vie
raised from death to life
lor fist la sucurs et aie;
to-them made the succor and aid
or si oiez en quel maniere.
now so hear in what manner
Le rei Richarz od sa gent fiere
The king Richard with his folk proud
un jor, entre midi e none,
one day between noon and nones

s'en esteit eissu d'Escalone
himself-thence was gone-out from-Ascalon
e aloit le Daron veoir
and went the Daron to-see
que il prist puis par asseoir,
which he took after by besieging
ou li Sarazin recetouent
where the Saracens sheltered
qui de Babiloine aportouent
who from Babylon brought
en Jerusalem la vitaille
into Jerusalem the victuals
en peis, sanz noise e sanz bataille,
in peace without noise and without battle
ainçois que le Daron fust pris.
before that the Daron were taken
La esteient cil entrepris
There were those captured
que l'en menoit morir a honte.
whom one led to-die at shame
Que fereie vos altre conte?
What would-I-make to-you other tale
Si com li reis veneit illoques
So as the king came there
e sa hardie gent oveques,
and his bold folk with-him
e li Turc sa baniere virent,
and the Turks his banner saw
pour eurent, si s'esbairent.
fear they-had so themselves-were-dismayed

Tels i ot el chastel se mistrent,
Such there were into-the castle themselves put
e li cheitifs dehors remistrent,
and the captives outside left
que cil n'osouent retenir
whom these not-dared to-retain
quant il virent le rei venir,
when they saw the king come
einz se mistrent en une eglise;
rather themselves put in a church
la ert la povre gent remise:
there was the poor folk put-back
la vint li reis, sis delivra,
there came the king so-them delivered
e les Turs toz a mort livra,
and the Turks all to death delivered
cels qu'il pot entrechevalchier;
those whom-he could ride-down
si i guaina meint cheval fier,
so there gained many-a horse proud
e i prist le jor vint Turs vifs
and there took the day twenty Turks alive
estre cels qui furent ocis;
besides those who were killed
e si Deus de la sue main
and if God with the his hand
ne l'eust mené, l'endemain
not him-had led the-next-day

fussent li cheitif conveié
would-have-been the captives convoyed
e en Babiloine enveié,
and into Babylon sent
e en cheitivisons murussent,
and in captivities would-have-died
se li reis e sa gent ne fusent.
if the king and his folk not had-been

The Captives Freed, and Strife at Acre

XI

Richard summons the marquis to Ascalon to earn his share of the kingdom, but the marquis will not come before a parley at Casal Ymbert. When the duke of Burgundy cannot pay the French and Richard refuses him a further loan, the duke goes to Acre, where the Pisans, for King Guy, and the Genoese, for the marquis, are fighting; the marquis sails up to seize the city, but flees to Tyre when Richard arrives by night. Richard makes peace between them and meets the marquis again at Casal Ymbert, but the marquis fails him in every covenant. Raids from Jaffa and Ascalon bring back rich booty and captives, and the duke and the marquis call the French to Tyre.

Quant Dampnedeus ot delivree
When Lord-God had delivered
sa gent qui ert a mort livree,
his folk which was to death delivered
dont il out mis le rei Richard
whereof he had put the king Richard
en l'eschange saint Leonard,
in the-exchange (of-)saint Leonard

qui les prisons ot deliez,
who the prisoners had unbound
dont Deus esteit tant graciez,
whereof God was so-much thanked
lors manda li rois al marchis,
then sent the king to-the marquis
qui plusors feiz l'en ot requis,
who several times him-thereof had asked
que a Eschalone venist
that to Ascalon he-should-come
e que son liu en l'ost tenist,
and that his place in the-host he-should-hold
e qu'il deservist sa partie
and that-he should-deserve his part
del regne, qui lui fud partie
of-the kingdom which to-him was shared
e par devant le rei de France
and by before the king of France
par serement e par fiance.
by oath and by pledge
Issi faitement lui manda;
So in-manner to-him he-sent
e li marchis lui remanda
and the marquis to-him sent-back
qu'en l'ost son pié n'en portereit
that-into the-host his foot not-thereof he-would-carry
devant ço qu'a lui parlereit.
before this that-to him he-should-speak

E puis parlerent il ensenble
And after spoke they together
al casel Ymbert, ço me semble.
at-the casal Ymbert this to-me seems
Illoc ou noz genz surjornouent
There where our folk stayed
a Eschalone qu'il fermouent,
at Ascalon which-they fortified
ou il esteient par escholes,
where they were by companies
illoc surstrent unes paroles
there arose some words
del rei e del duc de Burgoine,
of-the king and of-the duke of Burgundy
qui mult empeira la besoine.
which much worsened the business
Li Franceis al duc demandouent
The French to-the duke asked
les soudees e l'en hastouent,
the wages and him-thereof hastened
e il nes aveit dont paier;
and he not-them had whereof to-pay
e por ço ala a essaier
and for this went to try
al rei d'Engletere e saveir
to-the king of-England and to-know
s'encor lui prestast plus aveir
if-yet to-him he-would-lend more wealth

qu'il n'aveit as Franceis presté
than-he had to-the French lent
desur lor part d'Acre en l'esté.
upon their part of-Acre in the-summer
Mais li reis ne volt plus prest faire;
But the king not wished more loan to-make
e por ceste e por autre affaire
and for this and for other business
i ot assez paroles dites
there were many words said
qui ne sunt mie ici escrites,
which not are at-all here written
tant que le duc parti d'iloques
until that the duke departed from-there
par mal e des Franceis oveques,
by ill and of-the French with-him
e vindrent a Acre batant.
and they-came to Acre in-haste
Illoc troverent combatant
There they-found fighting
les Geneveis od cels de Pise;
the Genoese with those of Pisa
car li Pisan par lor franchise
for the Pisans by their nobleness
od le rei Guion se tenoient
with the king Guy themselves held
e li Genevois s'apendoient
and the Genoese themselves-inclined

vers le marchis por sa fiance,
toward the marquis for his pledge
qu'il iert jurez le rei de France.
for-he was sworn (to-)the king of France
Eth vos a Acre grant barate,
Behold you at Acre great strife
e la vile en malveis estate,
and the town in bad state
e gent oscire e gent tuer,
and folk to-slay and folk to-kill
e grant noise faire e huer;
and great noise to-make and to-shout
e tant que li Franceis s'armerent
and so-much that the French themselves-armed
e le duc e cil qui la erent.
and the duke and those who there were
E quant cil de Pise ço virent,
And when those of Pisa this saw
hardiement se defendirent,
boldly themselves defended
e firent al duc de Burgoine
and did to-the duke of Burgundy
tote honte e tote vergoine;
all shame and all disgrace
car son cheval soz lui ocistrent,
for his horse under him they-killed
e mal gré suen a pié le mistrent.
and ill will his on foot him they-put

Puis cururent les portes clore,
Then they-ran the gates to-close
car n'i voleient gent enclore
for not-there they-wished folk to-enclose
dont la citié eust damage;
whereof the city should-have damage
car li Genevois par message
for the Genoese by message
eurent al marchis endité
had to-the marquis told
qu'il li rendreient la citié.
that-they to-him would-yield the city
Icil i vint od ses gualees
That-one there came with his galleys
e od ses genz totes armees,
and with his folk all armed
e quida la citié sorprendre.
and thought the city to-surprise
Lors veissiez les Pisanz prendre
Then you-might-have-seen the Pisans take
as mangoneaus e as perieres,
to-the mangonels and to-the petraries
come hardies genz e fieres.
as bold folk and proud
Treis jorz issi s'entrassaierent,
Three days thus each-other-tested
tant que li Pisan enveierent
until that the Pisans sent
batant por le rei d'Engletere.
in-haste for the king of-England

Icil iert ja venu par terre
That-one was already come by land
a Cesaire, com jo enquis,
to Caesarea as I inquired
por aler parler au marchis;
for to-go to-speak to-the marquis
car li messagier l'encontrerent.
for the messengers him-met
Lors chevalcherent e errerent,
Then they-rode and journeyed
e vint a Acre en la nuit noire;
and he-came to Acre in the night black
e quant li marchis sot la veire,
and when the marquis knew the truth
que li reis iert d'iloc venuz,
that the king was from-there come
onques n'i pot estre tenuz,
ever not-there could be held
einz s'en ala bon eire a Sur,
rather himself-thence went good pace to Tyre
que fud adonc li vens d'Arsur;
which was then the wind of-Arsuf
e le duc de Burgoine anceis
and the duke of Burgundy before
i ert alé o ses Franceis.
there was gone with his French
E quant li reis ot ço seu
And when the king had this known
a Acre, ou il aveit geu,
at Acre where he had lain

par matin monta el demain
by morning mounted in-the morrow
e prist tote la chose en main,
and took all the thing in hand
e fud la noise departie
and was the noise ended
en pais de chescone partie,
in peace on each side
e les Geneveis acorda
and the Genoese reconciled
as Pisans, e se recorda
to-the Pisans and himself remembered
que a grant mal peust torner,
that to great harm could turn
s'il n'alast la pais atorner.
if-he not-had-gone the peace to-arrange
Quant cil de Gienve e cil de Pise
When those of Genoa and those of Pisa
furent acordé en tel guise
were reconciled in such manner
come genz ou tanz jorz out guerre,
as folk where so-many days had war
lors manda li reis d'Engletere
then sent the king of-England
al marchis que il assemblassent
to-the marquis that they should-meet
al Casel Ymbert e parlassent,
at-the Casal Ymbert and should-speak

saveir mon se il ja peussent
to-know indeed if they ever could
faire tant qu'a un acort fussent;
make so-much that-at one accord they-should-be
e vindrent la e assemblerent,
and they-came there and met
e longement illoc parlerent
and long there spoke
li reis e le marchis ensemble;
the king and the marquis together
mais ne monta rien, ço me semble;
but not amounted anything this to-me seems
car li marchis tot maintenant
for the marquis all at-once
failli al rei de covenant,
failed to-the king of covenant
que par le duc des Burgoignons,
what by the duke of-the Burgundians
que par ses autres compaignons,
what by his other companions
qui de la pais le desveierent,
who from the peace him turned-aside
tant que tote la depescierent.
until that all it they-broke-up

* * *

(lacuna)

E quant li reis solt cel affaire
And when the king knew that business

si li fud jugié par dreiture
so to-him was judged by right
que por ço que il n'aveit cure
that for this that he not-had care
de sa partie desservir
of his part to-deserve
del riaume, ne Deu servir,
of-the kingdom nor God to-serve
que a ses rentes se prendreient
that to his rents themselves would-take
e que il l'en deffaillereient.
and that they him-thereof would-fail
E de ço vint la descordance
And from this came the discord
del rei e des barons de France
of-the king and of-the barons of France
e del marchis, qui les Franceis
and of-the marquis who the French
atrest e lores e anceis,
drew and then and before
e trobla si tote la terre
and troubled so all the land
que onques le rei d'Engletere,
that ever the king of-England
al mien avis et al mien esme,
at-the my opinion and at-the my reckoning

de pres de treis parz de quaresme
from near of three parts of Lent

* * *
(lacuna)

fud qu'il n'osa Acre leissier.
was that-he not-dared Acre to-leave

Tierç jor devant Pache flurie
Third day before Easter flowered

s'esmut de la bachelerie
himself-moved of the young-knighthood

de Jaffe dreit a Mirabel;
from Jaffa straight to Mirabel

si fud a plusors genz mult bel
so was to several folk very fair

d'une grant proie qu'il troverent,
of-a great booty which-they found

car il trestote l'en menerent,
for they all thence led

e trente Sarazins ocistrent,
and thirty Saracens killed

e cinquante toz vis en pristrent,
and fifty all alive thereof took

e a Jaffe a tot s'en revindrent;
and to Jaffa with all themselves-thence came-back

demie la proie en retindrent,
half the booty thereof they-retained

dont a peine sorent le conte,
whereof with pain they-knew the count

e la metié en fud al conte.
and the half thereof was to-the count

La part as serjanz fud vendue,
The part to-the sergeants was sold
si come j'ai l'ovre entendue,
so as I-have the-work understood
plus de quatorze cenz besanz
more than fourteen hundred bezants
Sarazineiz, forz e pesanz.
Saracen strong and heavy
Le samedi après sanz dote
The Saturday after without doubt
reissirent d'Escalone en rote
went-out-again from-Ascalon in troop
tuit icil qui chevals aveient
all those who horses had
por une proie qu'il saveient,
for a booty which-they knew
qui lor ot esté espiee.
which to-them had been spied
Bien le firent cele fiee,
Well it they-did that time
car cil redistrent qui i furent
for those told-again who there were
que desque en Egipte cururent,
that until into Egypt they-ran
oltre le Daron quatre liuues;
beyond the Daron four leagues
si pristrent e chevals e iuues;
so took both horses and mares

e si i pristrent bien sanz faille
and so there took well without fail
set cenz que berbiz que almaille,
seven hundred what sheep what cattle
e asnes vint e chameilz trente;
and asses twenty and camels thirty
si pristrent a la meie entente
so took to the my understanding
plus de noef vinz genz mescreanz,
more than nine score folk misbelieving
que homes, que femmes, que emfanz;
what men what women what children
e s'en vindrent o lie chiere
and themselves-thence came with glad face
tot dreit a Escalone ariere.
all straight to Ascalon back
Vos oistes la descordee
You heard the discord
que jo aveie ore recordee
which I had now recounted
des barons qui se descorderent:
of-the barons who themselves disagreed
le duc e le marchis manderent
the duke and the marquis sent
de Sur a Escalone a l'ost,
from Tyre to Ascalon to the-host
a trestoz les Franceis, que tost
to all the French that soon
a Sur al marchis s'en venissent,
to Tyre to-the marquis themselves-thence they-should-come

e que tuit a lui se tenissent,
and that all to him themselves should-hold
si qu'il fud d'els toz a fiance
so that-he was of-them all in pledge
sor l'omage le rei de France.
upon the-homage (of-)the king of France
E lors fud l'ovre descoverte
And then was the-work uncovered
e bien seue e bien aperte
and well known and well open
e le barat e la traine
and the deceit and the treachery
e la cruel mortel haine
and the cruel mortal hatred
dont li faus marchis atorna,
whereof the false marquis arranged
quant li reis franceis retorna,
when the king French returned
le serement qu'il s'entrefirent,
the oath which-they each-other-made
par quei li Franceis s'en partirent
by which the French themselves-thence departed
a cel point del rei d'Engletere,
at that point from-the king of-England
qui tendeit al preu de la terre
who tended to-the profit of the land
issi com vos m'orez retraire,
so as you me-will-hear recount
s'il vous pleust un poi atraire.
if-it you should-please a little to-draw-near

Holy Week, and the Holy Fire

XII

In Holy Week the French ask Richard for the escort he promised, and he grants it, weeping, and begs them in vain to stay at his cost; on Maundy Thursday more than seven hundred knights leave the host. Saladin, hearing of the discord, summons his emirs back to Syria. On Easter Saturday the holy fire lights the lamp at the Sepulcher, and lights it again each time Saladin has it put out. Richard holds his Easter court outside Ascalon, the French revel at Tyre, and Ambroise sets their discord against the unity of Charlemagne's host and the first crusaders. After Easter the prior of Hereford brings word that Richard's brother has driven out his chancellor, and Richard tells the barons he must go, offering to leave three hundred knights and two thousand sergeants in Syria.

A un marsdi de la semaine
On a Tuesday of the week
penuse, que gent ont tant peine,
painful when folk have so-much pain
revint li reis a l'ost ariere,
came-back the king to the-host back
coreciez od pensive chiere;
angered with pensive face
e le mecresdi le requistrent
and the Wednesday him asked
li baron de France e li distrent
the barons of France and to-him said
qu'il lor aparillast conduit,
that-he to-them should-prepare escort
issi com il le lor ot dit
so as he it to-them had said
e com il ot en covenant;
and as he had in covenant

e il otreia meintenant
and he granted at-once
e bailla de ses Peitevins
and gave of his Poitevins
e de Mansels e de Angevins
and of Manceaux and of Angevins
e des barons de Normendie;
and of-the barons of Normandy
e il sis cors par compainie
and he his body by company
les conveia tot en plurant,
them escorted all in weeping
e preia les en demorant
and prayed them in remaining
qu'a son cust o lui remansissent
that-at his cost with him they-should-remain
e que ensemble se tenissent;
and that together themselves should-hold
mais onques ne voldrent remaindre.
but ever not they-wished to-remain
E quant a rien ne pot ataindre
And when at anything not could reach
e il n'oirent sa proiere,
and they not-heard his prayer
si vint a Escalone ariere,
so came to Ascalon back
e manda a Acre batant
and sent to Acre in-haste
isnelement pié en estant
swiftly foot in standing

a ses jostises qu'il gardassent
to his justiciars that-they should-guard
que Franceis ne se herberjassent.
that French not themselves should-lodge
Ço fud le joesdi absolu
This was the Thursday absolute
que pechié ot issi tolu
that sin had thus taken-away
a l'ost le barnage de France.
from the-host the baronage of France
Eth vos l'ost en fiere dotance,
Behold you the-host in fierce doubt
pensive e morne e desheitiee,
pensive and gloomy and dejected
e durement apeticiee
and hard diminished
de plus de set cent chevaliers,
by more than seven hundred knights
preissiez d'armes, preuz e legiers,
prized of-arms worthy and nimble
qui n'osoient plus demorer.
who not-dared more to-remain
La veissiez tant gent plorer
There you-might-have-seen so-many folk weep
por la descordee qu'il eurent!
for the discord that-they had
E quant li Sarazin la seurent,
And when the Saracens it knew
saciez que mult s'en esjoirent;
know that much themselves-thereof rejoiced

si conterent cil qui l'oirent
so told those who it-heard
que Salahadins comanda
that Saladin commanded
ses briefs a faire e si manda
his letters to make and so sent
a toz les admiralz des terres
to all the emirs of-the lands
dont il iert sires par ses gueres
whereof he was lord by his wars
qu'il revenissent en Sulie,
that-they should-come-back into Syria
car Franc ne conqueroient mie,
for Franks not conquered at-all
ainz i avoit tel discordee,
rather there was such discord
qui bien li estoit recordee,
which well to-him was recounted
que par son sen e son avoir
that by his sense and his wealth
qu'il quidoit Sur e Acre avoir.
that-he thought Tyre and Acre to-have
E cil son comandement tindrent,
And those his command held
mais pereçosement i vindrent;
but slothfully there they-came
neporquant tant en rasembla
nevertheless so-much thereof he-reassembled
que trop furent, ço me sembla.
that too-many they-were this to-me seemed

A grant Pasches le samedi,
At great Easter the Saturday
si dit cil après cui jel di,
so says he after whom I-it say
ert li soltans Salahadins
was the sultan Saladin
* * *
(lacuna)
en Jerusalem al sepulcre:
in Jerusalem at-the sepulcher
la aveit meint cristien mucre,
there was many-a Christian sullen
chetif en fers e en liens,
captive in irons and in bonds
de latins e de Suliens,
of Latins and of Syrians
qui tendrement illoc plorouent
who tenderly there wept
et en plorant a Deu priouent
and in weeping to God prayed
merci por la cristienté,
mercy for the Christendom
qui iert chaete en orfenté.
which was fallen into orphanhood
Si com il alouent plorant
So as they went weeping
a dolces lermes en orant,
with sweet tears in praying
eth vos le feu espiritel,
behold you the fire spiritual

tot autresi e tot itel
all likewise and all such
com il solt venir en la lampe:
as it is-wont to-come into the lamp
si com oil d'ome monte et rampe,
so as eye of-man mounts and climbs
virent tuit, joefne e ancien,
saw all young and old
e Sarazin e cristien,
and Saracen and Christian
que la lampe s'iert alumee
that the lamp itself-was lit
si com ele iert acustumee.
so as it was accustomed
Eth vos li poeples esmeuz,
Behold you the people stirred
quant tel miracle fud veuz.
when such miracle was seen
Li Sarazin s'esmerveillerent,
The Saracens themselves-marveled
e si disoient e quiderent
and so said and thought
que ço fud par enchantement
that this was by enchantment
que el alumast si faitement.
that it should-light so in-manner
Salahadins volt l'ovre ataindre,
Saladin wished the-work to-reach
si comanda la lampe estaindre,
so commanded the lamp to-extinguish

e ses genz eralment l'estainstrent;
and his folk forthwith it-extinguished
mais lor pensé a rien n'ateinstrent,
but their thought at anything not-reached
* * *
(lacuna)
que la lampe ne ralumast;
that the lamp not should-light-again
e il dist qu'el refust estainte:
and he said that-it should-be-again extinguished
e Dampnedeus volt que atainte
and Lord-God wished that reached
fust illoques la verité
should-be there the truth
en son non et en sa citié,
in his name and in his city
si la raluma tierce foiz.
so it relit third time
Quant Salahadins vit les foiz
When Saladin saw the faith
des cristiens e la creance,
of-the Christians and the belief
lors dist por voir e sanz dotance
then said for true and without doubt
a ses Turs que par tens morroit
to his Turks that by time he-would-die
ou que la citié ne seroit
or that the city not would-be
pas seue quite longement;
at-all his free long

e il ne vesqui solement
and he not lived only
al mien avis e al mien esme
at-the my opinion and at-the my reckoning
après fors desqu'a un quaresme.
after except until-to a Lent
A granz Pasches, la feste chiere,
At great Easter the feast dear
tint li rois cort grant e pleniere
held the king court great and full
por ses genz de l'ost conforter,
for his folk of the-host to-comfort
e fist ses pavillons porter
and made his pavilions carry
dehors Escalone e estendre ***
outside Ascalon and stretch (lacuna)
la viande que il volt prendre.
the food which he wished to-take
La curt ne dura fors un jor,
The court not lasted except one day
e l'endemain sanz plus sejor
and the-next-day without more stay
refist li rois as murs ovrer,
had-again the king at-the walls work
e les ovraines recovrer
and the works recover
que li Franceis eurent gerpies
which the French had abandoned
quant lor gent s'ent erent parties.
when their folk themselves-thence were departed

Il refist tot del suen refaire
He had-again all of-the his remake
quant qu'il i avoit a parfaire.
as-much as-it there had to complete
Vos m'oistes ore conter,
You me-heard now tell
a qui il plot a escoter,
to whom it pleased to listen
del convoi de sa baronie
of-the escort of his baronage
de Peitou e de Normendie,
of Poitou and of Normandy
d'Anjo, del Maine, qui ainçois
of-Anjou of-the Maine who before
orent convoié les Franceis
had escorted the French
desqu'a Acre e puis s'en revindrent;
until-to Acre and then themselves-thence came-back
si orez coment se contindrent
so you-will-hear how themselves conducted
li Franceis a Sur ou il furent,
the French at Tyre where they were
une piece qu'il i esturent,
a while that-they there stayed
e quels bien vint de lor affaire,
and what good came of their business
e que il i alerent faire,
and what they there went to-do

quels besoines, quels chevalchees
what businesses what rides
et quels paines e quels haschees
and what pains and what toils
por amor Deu il i soffrirent.
for love (of-)God they there suffered
Ço conterent cil qui le virent
This told those who it saw
qu'il fesoient par nuit les tresches,
that-they made by night the dances
e portoient les garlandesches
and wore the garlands
de flors en lor chiés e corones;
of flowers on their heads and crowns
e seoient devant les tones,
and sat before the casks
e bevoient desqu'a matines;
and drank until-to matins
e puis par les foles meschines
and then through the foolish maidens
revenoient les huis brisant,
came-back the doors breaking
e foles paroles disant,
and foolish words saying
e jurant les granz sairemenz;
and swearing the great oaths
tels estoit lor repairemenz.
such was their repair

Ge ne di pas que tuit feissent
I not say at-all that all did
tel vilainie ne deissent,
such villainy nor said
car li prodome qui la furent
for the worthy-men who there were
e qui sor lor pois i resturent,
and who against their weight there remained
a qui pesot de la descorde
to whom it-weighed of the discord
ou Deus ne voleit metre acorde,
where God not wished to-put accord
cil en erent trop corescié;
those thereof were too-much angered
mais li malvais esleicié
but the wicked rejoiced
estoient de la descordance
were at the discord
des barons et del roi de France.
of-the barons and of-the king of France
Quant li vaillant reis Charlemaines,
When the valiant king Charlemagne
qui tant conquist terres et regnes,
who so-much conquered lands and realms
ala osteier en Espaine
went to-make-war in Spain
ou il mena la preuz compaine
where he led the worthy company

qui fu vendue al roi Marsilie
which was sold to-the king Marsile
par Guenelon, dont France avile;
by Ganelon whereby France is-debased
e quant il refu en Sesoigne,
and when he was-in-turn in Saxony
ou il fist meinte grant besoigne
where he did many-a great business
e il desconfist Guiteclin
and he discomfited Guiteclin
e mist les Senes a declin
and put the Saxons to decline
par la force de maint prodome;
by the force of many-a worthy-man
e quant il mena l'ost par Rome,
and when he led the-host through Rome
quant Agolant par grant emprise
when Agolant by great enterprise
fu par mer arivé a Rise
was by sea arrived at Reggio
en Calabre la riche terre;
in Calabria the rich land
e quand Sulie a l'autre guerre
and when Syria at the-other war
refu perdue e reconquisse
was-again lost and reconquered
e Antioche fud assise;
and Antioch was besieged

e es granz ostz e es batailles
and in-the great hosts and in-the battles
sor les Turcs et sor les chenailles
upon the Turks and upon the dog-rabble
dont tant i ot mortes et mates,
whereof so-many there were dead and checkmated
la n'avoit estrifs ne barates,
there not-were strifes nor quarrels
lores a cel tens ne anceis,
then at that time nor before
qui erent Norman ou Franceis,
who were Norman or French
qui Peitevin ne ki Breton,
who Poitevin nor who Breton
qui Mansel ne ki Burgoinon,
who Manceau nor who Burgundian
ne ki Flamenc ne qui Engleis;
nor who Fleming nor who English
illoc n'aveit point de jangleis,
there not-was at-all of chattering
ne point ne s'entreramponouent;
nor at-all not each-other-mocked
mais tote honor en reportouent,
but all honor thereof carried-back
si erent tuit apelé Franc
so were all called Franks
e brun e bai e sor e blanc;
and brown and bay and sorrel and white

e par pechié quant descordouent,
and by sin when they-disagreed
e li prince les racordouent,
and the princes them reconciled
e erent tuit a une acorde,
and were all at one accord
si que poi i doroit descorde,
so that little there lasted discord
e ausi deussent cist faire
and also ought these do
e si guverner lor affaire
and so govern their business
que hom i peust essample prendre,
that man there could example take
non pas li uns l'autre entreprendre.
not at-all the one the-other to-reproach
Après Pasches au dreit passage
After Easter at-the right passage
vint al rei Richart un message
came to-the king Richard a messenger
dont l'ost fud en grant desconfort.
whereof the-host was in great discomfort
Ço iert li priors de Hereford,
This was the prior of Hereford
une prioré d'Engletere,
a priory of-England
qui en Sulie l'ala quere;
who in Syria him-went to-seek

si lui aporta tels noveles
so to-him brought such news
qui n'esteient bones ne beles,
which not-were good nor fair
e briefs seelez e escriz
and letters sealed and written
qui a grant besoing erent escriz,
which at great need were written
qui diseient que ses justises
which said that his justiciars
qu'il ot en Angletere mises
which-he had in England put
orent des chastels remuees,
had from-the castles removed
e en contree genz tuees
and in country folk killed
i aveit a l'oster eu,
there had at the-removing been
e ço aveit li priors veu;
and this had the prior seen
e si diseit encor la letre
and so said still the letter
que sis freres ot feit hors metre
that his brother had made out put
d'Engletere son chancelier,
from-England his chancellor
e qu'en chambre ne en celier
and that-in chamber nor in cellar

ne en tresor, fors en eglise,
nor in treasury except in church
ne li iert nule rien remise
not to-him was any thing left
qu'il n'eust fait saisir e prendre,
that-he not-had made seize and take
e tant osa faire e mesprendre
and so-much dared to-do and to-misdo
que au chancelier, qui esteit prestres
that to-the chancellor who was priest
e evesques e sire e meistres,
and bishop and lord and master
fist tant d'enui e vilainie
made so-much of-vexation and villainy
qu'il s'en fui en Normendie.
that-he himself-thence fled into Normandy
Encore i aveit autre affaire,
Still there was other business
qu'il tant voleit al rei mesfaire,
that-he so-much wished to-the king to-do-wrong
qui iert en son pelerinage,
who was in his pilgrimage
que les seremenz del barnage
that the oaths of-the baronage
d'Engleterre voleit aveir,
of-England he-wished to-have

* * *

(lacuna)

qui veneient a l'eschekier.
which came to the-exchequer
«Biaus sire, e por ço vos requier,»
Fair lord and for this you I-ask
dist li priors, «que vos viengiez
said the prior that you should-come
en vostre terre e vos vengiez
into your land and you should-avenge
de cels qui tant vos ont forfeit,
on those who so-much you have wronged
ou il crestront plus lor forfeit:
or they will-increase more their wrong
en la terre qu'en prent a taille
in the land which-one takes by tally
n'enterrez jameis sanz bataille.»
not-will-you-enter ever without battle
Seignors, or ne vos merveilliez
Lords now not you marvel
del rei qui s'esteit travilliez
at-the king who himself-was toiled
por Deu en la terre lointaine,
for God in the land distant
ou il ot tant travail e paine,
where he had so-much toil and pain
si fust troblé en son corage.
if were troubled in his heart
Car tel novele descorage
For such news discourages

chescon prodome e feit esperdre,
each worthy-man and makes lose-his-wits
qui sa digneté quide perdre.
who his dignity thinks to-lose
Eth vos la novele seue;
Behold you the news known
si ne cuit c'onques fust veue
so not I-think that-ever were seen
en nul liu gent plus coresciee
in any place folk more angered
par home ne si desheitiee
by man nor so dejected
qui d'un ost s'en deust partir,
who from-a host themselves-thence should part
car tuit fussent al departir
for all would-have-been at-the departing
se li reis s'en fust departiz,
if the king himself-thence were departed
si fust trop mal li giu partiz,
so would-be too-much ill the game divided
a ço qu'il erent a descorde;
at this that-they were at discord
si n'i eust ja meis acorde
so not-there would-have ever more accord
en cels de Sur e Escalone.
in those of Tyre and Ascalon
L'endemain entre tierce e none
The-next-day between tierce and nones

asembla li reis le barnage,
assembled the king the baronage
e dist oiant toz le message
and said hearing all the message
qui li ert venu d'Engleterre,
which to-him was come from-England
ke en li velt tolir sa terre
that one to-him wishes to-take-away his land
e qu'en lui aveit desposé
and that-one to-him had deposed
son chancelier par lui posé,
his chancellor by him placed
qui lui guardeit e mainteneit,
who him guarded and maintained
e por ço aler l'en coveneit;
and for this to-go him-thence behooved
e dist que s'issi avenist
and said that if-thus it-should-happen
que aler s'en l'en convenist,
that to-go himself-thence him-thereof should-behoove
qu'a son cust lareit en Sulie
that-at his cost he-would-leave in Syria
treis cenz chevaliers de baillie,
three hundred knights of command
si i lareit dous mile serjanz
so there would-leave two thousand sergeants
e preuz e leaus e vaillanz;
and worthy and loyal and valiant

e dist qu'il en voleit saveir
and said that-he thereof wished to-know
e respons en voleit aveir
and answer thereof wished to-have
qui od lui s'en voldroit venir,
who with him himself-thence would-wish to-come
e les en mist en convenir
and them thereof put in choice
ou de l'aler ou del remaindre,
either of the-going or of-the remaining
car il n'en voleit nul constreindre.
for he not-thereof wished any to-constrain

The Marquis Chosen, and the Marquis Murdered

XIII

The barons answer that without a lord the land will be abandoned, and choose the marquis over King Guy; Richard grants it, and Henry of Champagne rides to Tyre with the news. Ambroise tells how the marquis had sworn a peace with Saladin for half of Jerusalem, which Saphadin refused. The marquis, in his joy, prays God not to let him be crowned if he is unworthy. Two Assassins stab him in the street; Ambroise explains how the Old Man of Masyaf raises his killers. The marquis dies after confession, charging his wife to yield Tyre only to Richard or the rightful lord, and is buried at the Hospital, and Richard's enemies spread the lie that he hired the Assassins. The French demand Tyre of the marchioness, and when Henry arrives the people choose him king and ask him to wed her; he sends for Richard's assent.

Li haut home qui iloc erent
The high men who there were
de si faite chose parlerent
of so made thing spoke
come li reis les requereit.
as the king them asked
Chescons d'els mult i enquereit
Each-one of-them much there inquired
qu'il en deveient dire e faire,
what-they thereof ought say and do
si troverent en lor affaire,
so found in their business
por ço qu'en la terre n'el regne
for this that-in the land nor-in-the kingdom
n'aveit nul mestre cheveitaigne,
not-had any master chieftain
einz esteit en deus departie,
rather was in two divided
dont li reis Guis de sa partie
whereof the king Guy of his part
ne poeit en nul chef venir,
not could in any end come
e que li marchis revenir
and that the marquis to-come-back
ne voleit en l'ost por fiance,
not wished into the-host for pledge
ainz se teneit od cels de France,
rather himself held with those of France
si que tut aveit descordé,
so that all had disagreed

e quant eurent ço recordé,
and when they-had this recounted
si revindrent al rei ariere
so came-back to-the king back
e distrent, non pas en deriere,
and said not at-all in behind
que s'il ne feseit en la terre
that if-he not made in the land
un seignor qui seust de guerre
a lord who should-know of war
et a cui trestuit se tenissent
and to whom all themselves should-hold
de quelque part que il venissent,
from whatever side that they should-come
que tuit après lui s'en ireient,
that all after him themselves-thence would-go
e que la tere guerpireient.
and that the land they-would-abandon
E li reis demanda aneire,
And the king asked forthwith
qu'il quidot estre sor son eire,
for-he thought to-be upon his way
del quel des reis il le voloient
of-the which of-the kings they him wished
e del quel il le desvoloient,
and of-the which they him wished-not
del rei Guion e del marchis;
of-the king Guy and of-the marquis
e distrent tuit quin sunt requis
and said all who-thereof are asked

et devant lui s'agenoillerent
and before him themselves-knelt
e tuit requistrent e proierent,
and all asked and prayed
petit e main e greinor,
small and middle and greater
que del marchis feist seignor;
that of-the marquis he-should-make lord
car ço esteit le plus sucurables
for this was the most succoring
al regne et le plus aidables.
to-the kingdom and the most helpful
Quant li reis vit que tut le voldrent
When the king saw that all it wished
e que nuls genz ne le desvoldrent,
and that any folk not it wished-not
lues blama tels qui illoc esteient
at-once blamed such who there were
qui mal de lui dit li aveient;
who ill of him said to-him had
e quant chescons por lui proia,
and when each-one for him prayed
lors le volt e si otreia
then it wished and so granted
que hautes genz por lui alassent
that high folk for him should-go
e que a grant joie l'amenassent,
and that with great joy him-should-bring

e que il e li Franceis venissent
and that he and the French should-come
e que tot a un se tenissent.
and that all at one themselves should-hold
Ceste election que jo ai dite
This election which I have said
ne fud pas tenue a petite,
not was at-all held as small
ainz la voldrent e fol e sage.
rather it wished and mad and wise
Lors s'atornerent li message:
Then themselves-arrayed the messengers
li coens Henris, cil de Champaine,
the count Henry he of Champagne
si fud o lui en sa compaine
so was with him in his company
mis sire Otes de Transignees:
my lord Otho of Trazegnies
ço erent genz de hautes lignees;
these were folk of high lineages
si i fud de Caieu Willames.
so there was of Cayeux William
Lores mistrent es chiefs les hiaumes,
Then they-put on-the heads the helmets
le message alerent porter
the message went to-carry
e le marchis recomforter,
and the marquis to-comfort

e dire lui bones noveles
and to-say him good news
que mult semblerent a lui beles
which much seemed to him fair
e as Franceis qui a Sur erent.
and to-the French who at Tyre were
Lors chevalcherent e errerent,
Then they-rode and journeyed
si orroiz bien quant il i vindrent
so you-will-hear well when they there came
les choses com eles avindrent.
the things as they befell
Veritez fud e sanz dotance
Truth was and without doubt
que quant li barnages de France
that when the baronage of France
se fu alez o le marchis,
itself was gone with the marquis
e li reis Richarz l'ot requis
and the king Richard him-had asked
par tantez feiz com nos veimes
by so-many times as we saw
e come nos le vos deimes,
and as we it to-you said
qu'il venist aider a conquerre
that-he should-come to-help to conquer
en l'ost od les autres la terre,
in the-host with the others the land
que il n'i volt onques venir,
that he not-there wished ever to-come

dont li dut bien mesavenir.
whereof to-him ought well befall-ill
Ore si orrez qu'il volt faire,
Now so you-will-hear what-he wished to-do
e com il volt a Deu mesfaire:
and how he wished to God to-do-wrong
contre l'enor de la corone
against the-honor of the crown
et encontre l'ost d'Eschalone
and against the-host of-Ascalon
aveit tel pais asseuree
had such peace assured
a Salehadin e juree
to Saladin and sworn
que il devoit a lui venir,
that he ought to him come
e qu'il devoit de lui tenir
and that-he ought of him hold
de Jerusalem la moitié:
of Jerusalem the half
issi avoit ja esploitié
thus had already accomplished
vilainement, si i parut,
basely so there appeared
e si devoit aveir Barut
and so ought have Beirut
e si devoit aveir Saete,
and so ought have Sidon
si com li pais se porjete,
so as the country itself projects

e demie la terre ovecques
and half the land with-it
redevoit il aveir illoques.
ought-again he have there
Ceste pais volt Salehadins;
This peace wished Saladin
mais li admiralz Safadins
but the emir Saphadin
ne la velt onques creanter,
not it wishes ever to-grant
ainz oimes après conter
rather we-heard after tell
que il dist al soldan son frere:
that he said to-the sultan his brother
«Sire, ne place a Deu le pere
Lord not may-please to God the father
que pais a la cristienté
that peace with the Christendom
por nului qui vos ait tempté
for anyone who you may-have tempted
façoiz sanz le roi d'Engletere
you-should-make without the king of-England
(meillor cristien n'a en terre);
better Christian not-there-is on earth
ne jo nel lo ne jo nel voil.»
nor I not-it advise nor I not-it wish
E par tant remist lor conseil,
And by that remained their counsel

e ço i fu par tot seu
and this there was through all known
e cerchié e aconseu:
and searched and found-out
car Estienes de Tornehan
for Stephen of Turnham
en Jerusalem al soldan
in Jerusalem to-the sultan
estoit envoiez quant cil vindrent,
was sent when those came
dont plusors genz les noms retindrent:
whereof several folk the names retained
ço fud Balians d'Ibelin,
this was Balian of-Ibelin
qui iert plus faus de gobelin,
who was more false than goblin
e si i fu Renauz de Saete,
and so there was Reginald of Sidon
qui l'orde pais, non mie nete,
who the-foul peace not at-all clean
venoient quere e porchacier,
came to-seek and to-pursue
sis deust l'en a chiens chacier.
so-them ought one with dogs chase
Li messagier dont nos deimes,
The messengers of-whom we said
que el message aler veimes,
whom in-the message to-go we-saw

errerent tant par tels jornees
journeyed so-much by such days'-journeys
com il avoient atornees
as they had arranged
que il vindrent a Sur batant.
that they came to Tyre in-haste
Illoc descendirent a tant
There dismounted at that
e alerent droit al marchis,
and went straight to-the marquis
dire li ço qu'il orent quis,
to-say him this which-they had sought
cortoisement le saluerent;
courteously him they-greeted
e il e cil qui o lui erent
and he and those who with him were
les saluerent o granz ris;
them greeted with great laughter
e lors parla li coens Henris,
and then spoke the count Henry
si dist o bone volenté:
so said with good will
«Li rois e la cristienté,
The king and the Christendom
sire marchis, l'ost d'Eschalone
lord marquis the-host of-Ascalon
vos ont otrié la corone
to-you have granted the crown
e le riaume de Sulie.
and the kingdom of Syria

Venez en od vostre ost banie,
Come thence with your host summoned
si la conquerez fierement.»
so it conquer fiercely
Si dit l'estoire finement
So says the-history finely
qu'il ot tel joie en son corage
that-he had such joy in his heart
qu'il dist, oiant tot le barnage,
that-he said hearing all the baronage
ses deus mains vers le ciel dresciees,
his two hands toward the heaven raised
dont puis fist mult genz coreciees:
whereof after made many folk angered
«Biaus sire Deus qui me feis,
Fair lord God who me made
* * *
(lacuna)
tu, qui es voirs rois e benignes,
thou who art true king and benign
com sez, sire, que jo suis dignes
as thou-knowest lord that I am worthy
de ton regne bien governer,
of thy kingdom well to-govern
que jo m'en voie coroner,
that I me-thence may-see crowned
sire, e si tel ne me sentez
lord and if such not me you-feel
que vos ja ne le consentez.»
that you ever not it consent

La novele fud entendue
The news was heard
par la citié e espandue
through the city and spread
que li marchis rois en seroit,
that the marquis king thereof would-be
e tote l'ostz le requeroit.
and all the-host him asked
Eth vos la joie merveillose
Behold you the joy marvelous
e la gent liee e anguisosse
and the folk glad and eager
de harnescher e aprester,
of equipping and preparing
de tost acroire e d'empromter
of soon buying-on-credit and of-borrowing
or e argent a sa despense,
gold and silver for his expense
si come chescons de soi pense.
so as each-one of himself thinks
La veissiez armes ataindre,
There you-might-have-seen arms reach
hiaumes, chapeals de novel taindre;
helmets caps of new dye
la veissiez maint escuier
there you-might-have-seen many-a squire
meinte bele espee essuer;
many-a fair sword wipe
la veissiez haubercs roller,
there you-might-have-seen hauberks roll

chevaler e serjant moller
knight and sergeant train
a ferir sor la gent haie;
to strike upon the folk hated
la avoit gent de grant aie,
there had folk of great aid
si Deus volsist ovecques estre,
if God had-wished with to-be
qui mielz que nos savoit lor estre;
who better than we knew their state
la veissiez mult gent en joie.
there you-might-have-seen many folk in joy
Si est bien droiz qu'en sache e oie,
So is well right that-one should-know and hear
e par droit le puet l'en oir,
and by right it can one hear
que nus ne joie sorjoir
that anyone nor joy over-rejoice
ne devroit ne doel sordoloir.
not ought nor grief over-grieve
Tuit estoient en bon voloir
All were in good will
e en talent de cest affaire,
and in desire of this business
e erent alé enpront faire
and were gone a-loan to-make
li cuens Henris od le barnage
the count Henry with the baronage
qui ot aporté le message
who had brought the message

a Acre, ou il ja s'atornoient
to Acre where they already themselves-arrayed
d'aler en l'ost e s'aprestoient;
of-going into the-host and themselves-prepared
si fud la fine vertez pure
so was the fine truth pure
qu'a Sur avint par aventure
that-at Tyre befell by chance
que li marchis aveit mangié,
that the marquis had eaten
e s'en venoit a son congié
and himself-thence came at his leave
de chiés l'evesque de Biauveiz
from house-of the-bishop of Beauvais
od grant solaz e od granz heiz,
with great solace and with great gaiety
et estoit ja devant le change:
and was already before the exchange
or si orrez com joie change
now so you-will-hear how joy changes
et est tost tornee en tristesce.
and is soon turned into sadness
Si com il veneit od leesce,
So as he came with gladness
et dui vallet od deus cotiaus,
and two youths with two knives
defublié erent sanz mantiaus,
unclothed were without mantles
s'en vindrent dreit vers lui corant,
themselves-thence came straight toward him running

sil ferirent en acorant
so-him struck in running-up
par mi le cors tant qu'il chai;
through midst the body so-much that-he fell
e cil qui l'avoient trahi,
and those who him-had betrayed
qui erent ome al Harsasis,
who were men of-the Assassin
li uns fu maintenant ocis,
the one was at-once killed
li autres se mist en un mostier;
the other himself put in a minster
mais onques ne li ot mestier,
but ever not to-him had need
qu'il ne fust pris e trainez
that-he not were taken and dragged
tant que li cors en fu finez,
until that the body thereof was ended
fors tant qu'ançois li demanderent
except so-much that-before to-him asked
que il morust cil qui la erent
that he should-die those who there were
por quoi il aveient ço fait,
for what they had this done
e que il lor avoit forfait,
and what he to-them had wronged
e qui les avoit envoiez,
and who them had sent
e tant qu'il dist, li desliez,
and so-much that-he said the wicked

puis le sot l'en de verité,
after it knew one of truth
que por ço avoient abité
that for this they-had dwelt
longement entor le marchis,
long around the marquis
quin orent esté contrequis
who-thereof had been hired
d'oscire le, desqu'a tel terme
of-killing him until-at such term
ou il ot ploré mainte lerme,
where he had wept many-a tear
e qu'envoieiz les en avoit
and that-sent them thereof had
li vils de Mouse quil haioit,
the Old-Man of Masyaf who-him hated
qui toz cels qu'il het de haine
who all those whom-he hates with hatred
fait ocire par tel traine
makes kill by such treachery
come vos orrez ja conter,
as you will-hear soon tell
s'il vos plaist ja a escoter.
if-it you pleases now to listen
Li vilz de Mouse a tel custume,
The Old-Man of Masyaf has such custom
e d'oir en oir s'i acustume,
and from-heir to heir himself-there accustoms

qu'il fait norir en sa maison
that-he makes nourish in his house
mult enfanz, tant qu'il ont raison
many children until that-they have reason
e doctrine e enseignement,
and doctrine and teaching
e aprenent contenement,
and learn bearing
e hantent od hautes genz sages,
and frequent with high folk wise
tant qu'il sevent toz les langages
until that-they know all the languages
des terres de par tot le siecle,
of-the lands of through all the world
e lor creance est si teniecle
and their belief is so dark
e si cruel e si oscure
and so cruel and so obscure
que en lor aprent od grant cure,
that one to-them teaches with great care
quant li vielz de Mouse les mande
when the Old-Man of Masyaf them summons
de devant lui e lor comande
from before him and to-them commands
en gueredon de penitance
in reward of penance
de lor pechiez e d'aliance,
of their sins and of-alliance
qu'il aillent ocire un halt home;
that-they should-go to-kill a high man

si est de lor ovre la some
so is of their work the sum
que illoques lor baille cutels
that there to-them he-gives knives
granz e furbis e clers e bels;
great and furbished and bright and fair
e cil s'en tornent e aguaitent
and those themselves-thence turn and watch
le haut home, e s'i ***
the high man and themselves-there (lacuna)
e devienent de sa maisniee,
and become of his household
e ont lange trop enreisniee,
and have tongue too-much well-schooled
tant qu'il li ont tolu la vie:
until that-they to-him have taken-away the life
lors quident aver deservie
then they-think to-have deserved
la grant haute joie celestre,
the great high joy celestial
qui ne puet avenir ne estre;
which not can happen nor be
e autretel, seignur, meismes
and likewise lords the-same
furent cil dui que nos deimes,
were those two whom we said
qui le marchis issi ocistrent.
who the marquis thus killed
Ses genz entre lor braz le pristrent
His folk between their arms him took

tot soavet, e sil drescierent
all softly and so-him raised
de la place ou il le blescierent,
from the place where they him wounded
si l'em porterent a l'ostel.
so him-thence carried to the-lodging
Las veisiez un doel itel
There you-might-have-seen a grief such
que tot le poeple i acurut; 8855
that all the people there ran-up
un poi vesqui e puis morut,
a little he-lived and then died
mais il ot einz confession,
but he had before confession
e dist einz en saucession
and said before in succession
a la marchise sa moiller,
to the marchioness his wife
a qui il vit les oilz moillier, 8860
to whom he saw the eyes moisten
que a guarder Sur mult entendist,
that to guard Tyre much she-should-attend
e que la citié ne rendist
and that the city not she-should-yield
fors al cors le rei d'Engletere
except to-the body (of-)the king of-England
ou al dreit seignor de la terre.
or to-the right lord of the land

Eth le vos mort, si l'entererent,
Behold him you dead so him-they-buried
e clerc e lai lor doel merrerent.
and clerk and lay their grief made
A l'Ospital fud enterrez;
At the-Hospital was buried
illoc fud li grand doel merrez:
there was the great grief made
onques meis n'ot greignor eu;
ever more not-had greater had
mais issi l'ot Deus porveu.
but thus it-had God provided
Eth vos la novele espandue,
Behold you the news spread
eth vos la grant joie esperdue,
behold you the great joy lost
qui lor ot si poi de duree,
which to-them had so little of duration
de la terre qui iert juree
of the land which was sworn
celui qu'issi tost l'ot leissiee.
that-one who-thus soon it-had left
Eth vos terre desconseillee,
Behold you land at-a-loss
e si plaine de doel e de ire
and so full of grief and of wrath
que nus hom ne savreit redire.
that any man not would-know to-tell

Oiez come diables ovre
Hear how devil works
e come sa ovre se descovre
and how his work itself uncovers
en mal e com el multeplie
in evil and how it multiplies
illoc e com il la desplie,
there and how he it unfolds
e com il la multeplia
and how he it multiplied
al long, quant il la desploia,
at-the long when he it unfolded
d'une parole qui fud dite
of-a word which was said
par enviose gent maudite,
by envious folk accursed
qui le preu rei Richart haoient
who the worthy king Richard hated
e ses fez a nient traoient,
and his deeds to nothing drew
qu'en deussent estre chacié;
that-thereby they-ought be chased
e cil distrent que porchacié
and these said that procured
aveit le rei Richarz e quis
had the king Richard and sought
par luiers la mort al marchis,
by wages the death to-the marquis

e manderent al rei de France
and sent to-the king of France
que il pot aveir grant dotance
that he could have great fear
e se guardast des Harsasis,
and himself should-guard from-the Assassins
car li marchis en iert ocis,
for the marquis thereby was killed
e qu'en France la dulce terre
and that-into France the sweet land
en aveit li reis de Engletere
thereof had the king of England
quatre enveiez por lui oscire.
four sent for him to-kill
Deus! si laide chose est a dire,
God so ugly thing is to say
e si vilment cil espleiterent
and so vilely those acted
qui itel message envoierent,
who such message sent
dont furent puis genz travaillees
whereby were after folk toiled
e trublees e coreciees!
and troubled and angered
Car par icele mesprison
For by that misdeed
fud puis li reis mis en prison
was after the king put in prison

par traison e par l'envie
by treason and by the-envy
des biens que il fist en Sulie.
of-the good-deeds that he did in Syria
Quant li marchis fud enterez
When the marquis was buried
et il orent lor doelz merrez
and they had their griefs made
e feit li ço que il deveient,
and done to-him this which they ought
e li baron de France esteient
and the barons of France were
en lor tentes hors de la vile,
in their tents outside of the town
que haut, que bas, plus que dis mile;
what high what low more than ten thousand
e li haut ensemble parlerent
and the high together spoke
e a la marchise manderent
and to the marchioness sent
qu'ele lor rendist la citié
that-she to-them should-yield the city
trestut en peis e en quitié
all in peace and in quittance
en guarde a l'oes le rei de France;
in keeping for the-use (of-)the king of France
et el respondi sanz dotance
and she answered without doubt

que quant li reis la revendreit
that when the king there would-come-back
que mult volenters li rendreit,
that very willingly to-him she-would-yield
si ainz n'i ad autre seignor;
if before not-there has other lord
et il en eurent desdeignor.
and they thereof had disdain
Endementers qu'il estrivoient
Meanwhile that-they strove
si faitement e s'abrivoient
so in-manner and themselves-hastened
d'aveir Sur, si come jo dis,
of-having Tyre so as I said
eth vos que li bons cuens Henris
behold you that the good count Henry
vint en la vile e descendi,
came into the town and dismounted
si dit cil après cui jel di:
so says he after whom I-it say
e si tost com la gent le virent
and so soon as the folk him saw
onques plus terme n'atendirent,
ever more term not-they-awaited
einz l'orent a rei esleu,
rather him-had for king chosen
si come Deus l'ot porveu;
so as God it-had provided
et vindrent a lui e le pristrent,
and came to him and him took

e li proierent e lui distrent
and to-him prayed and to-him said
qu'il receust la seignorie
that-he should-receive the lordship
e le riaume de Sulie,
and the kingdom of Syria
e qu'il esposast la marchise,
and that-he should-wed the marchioness
qui iert eir e vedve remise.
who was heir and widow left
E il respondi eraument,
And he answered forthwith
e si qu'il n'i mist pas granment,
and so that-he not-there put at-all long
que quant Deus l'aveit apelé
that when God him-had called
e il l'aveient ancelé
and they him-had bound
a l'oir de governer la terre,
to the-heir of governing the land
que l'asens le rei d'Engleterre,
that the-assent (of-)the king of-England
de son oncle, en voleit aveir;
of his uncle thereof he-wished to-have
e a tant enveia saveir
and at that sent to-know
sa volonté e son corage
his will and his heart
de l'eslection del barnage.
of the-election of-the baronage

Henry of Champagne

XIV

The news reaches Richard in May while he hunts Saracens across the plains of Ramla. He grants his nephew Henry the land, with Acre, Tyre, and Jaffa, but warns him not to marry the marchioness; Henry marries her nonetheless, at the barons' urging, and is received at Acre with processions and relics. King Guy, whose one flaw, says Ambroise, was his simplicity, is left without a realm until he is given Cyprus. Messengers from England bring Richard news that contradicts itself, and he does not know whether to stay.

Ce fud en mai, quant renovele
This was in May when renews
flur e foille, que la novele
flower and leaf that the news
fud desqu'al rei Richart venue
was until-to-the king Richard come
que si iert la chose avenue
that so was the thing befallen
del marchis come nos contames.
of-the marquis as we told
Et li reis iert as plains de Rames,
And the king was at-the plains of Ramla
ou il poigneit par la beruie
where he spurred through the wasteland
en une chace d'une fuie
in a chase of-a flight
de Sarazins qui lui fuieient,
of Saracens who him fled
com a celui qu'il tant cremeient
as from him whom-they so-much feared

que puis que Deus forma la terre
that since that God formed the earth
ne fist uns hom as Turs tel guerre
not made a man to-the Turks such war
ne par un seul tant n'en murut;
nor by one alone so-many not-thereof died
meintes feiees i curut
many-a time there he-ran
e aportoit a l'ost les testes 8965
and brought to the-host the heads
des Sarazins come de bestes,
of-the Saracens as of beasts
ou dis ou duze ou vint ou trente,
or ten or twelve or twenty or thirty
dont paenie esteit dolente;
whereof heathendom was sorrowful
e de toz vifs en reperneit
and of all alive thereof he-took-again
li preuz Richarz quant l'enperneit: 8970
the worthy Richard when him-it-took
onc n'en murut tant por nul home.
ever not-thereof died so-many for any man
A cele foiz ço en est la some.
At that time this thereof is the sum
Eth vos les messages ferant,
Behold you the messengers striking
qui alouent le rei querant;
who went the king seeking

a lui vindrent, sil saluerent
to him came so-him greeted
de part le conte, e lui conterent
from part (of-)the count and to-him told
cele aventure del marchis,
that adventure of-the marquis
dont li poeples l'aveit requis
whereof the people him-had asked
que il fust sires de la terre
that he should-be lord of the land
* * *
(lacuna)
car li petit e li greignor
for the small and the greater
l'orent esleu a seignor,
him-had chosen for lord
e li voleient faire prendre
and to-him wished to-make take
la marchise; mes entreprendre
the marchioness but to-undertake
ne voleit a sa volenté,
not wished at his will
mais c'ert por la cristienté.
but it-was for the Christendom
Li reis fud longement pensis
The king was long pensive
de la novele del marchis,
of the news of-the marquis

qui par si grant mesaventure
who by so great misadventure
esteit ocis od tel laidure,
was killed with such ugliness
e de ço ot joie merveilluse
and of this had joy marvelous
qu'il solt la gent si anguisose
that-he knew the folk so eager
de son neveu tel honor faire;
of his nephew such honor doing
si respondi a tel affaire:
so answered to such business
«Seignor serjant, mult le desir
Lords sergeants much it I-desire
que il seit reis, al Deu plaisir,
that he be king at-the God pleasure
quant la terre sera comquisse;
when the land will-be conquered
mais n'espust il pas la marchise,
but not-should-wed he at-all the marchioness
celi que li marchis toli
her whom the marquis took-away
son dreit seignor, e jut o li
her right lord and lay with her
contre Deu e contre raison,
against God and against reason
e la tint par tel desraison
and her held by such unreason

que, s'il me creit, a son eage
that if-he me believes at his age
ne la prendra en mariage;
not her will-take in marriage
mais receive la seignorie
but let-him-receive the lordship
* * *
(lacuna)
e jo li doins Acre en demaine
and I to-him give Acre in demesne
e les rentes de la chaaine,
and the rents of the chain
e Sur e Jaffe e la justise
and Tyre and Jaffa and the justice
de tote la terre comquise;
of all the land conquered
car jo voil bien qu'il ço retiene;
for I wish well that-he this should-retain
e dites lui que en l'ost viegne,
and say him that into the-host he-should-come
sin ameint o lui les Franceis
so-thereof let-him-bring with him the French
si tost com il pora ainçois:
so soon as he will-be-able before
car jo voldrai le Daron prendre,
for I shall-wish the Daron to-take
si li Turc m'i osent atendre.»
if the Turks me-there dare await

Cil retindrent ço qu'il oirent
Those retained this which-they heard
del rei, e puis si s'en partirent
from-the king and then so themselves-thence departed
a son congé sanz plus d'aconte,
at his leave without more of-account
e revindrent a Sur al conte,
and came-back to Tyre to-the count
si li distrent e li conterent
so to-him said and to-him told
ço que del rei li aporterent.
this which from-the king to-him they-brought
Que vos en fereie autre conte?
What to-you thereof would-I-make other tale
Grant joie fud a Sur del conte,
Great joy was at Tyre of-the count
quant cil furent venu ariere.
when those were come back
La veissiez grant presse e fiere
There you-might-have-seen great press and fierce
de halz homes qui illoc erent,
of high men who there were
qui trestuit lui amonesterent
who all him admonished
de la marchise a moiller prendre;
of the marchioness to wife taking
mais ne l'osoit pur els emprendre
but not it-dared for them to-undertake
sor le peis le rei de Engletere;
against the will (of-)the king of England

mais ele esteit heir de la terre,
but she was heir of the land
e li quens l'aveit coveitee.
and the count her-had coveted
Eth la chose tant esploitee
Behold the thing so-much accomplished
que ele sis cors la marchise,
that she her body the marchioness
qui tote en esteit contrequise,
who all thereof was besought
porta les clefs de la citié
carried the keys of the city
al conte, ço fud verité;
to-the count this was truth
e li Franceis traient aneire,
and the French draw forthwith
si enveient por le proveire,
so send for the priest
si li font esposer la dame;
so to-him make wed the lady
e si feisse jo, par m'ame,
and so would-do I by my-soul
car ele esteit trop bele e gente,
for she was too-much fair and gentle
e si que a la meie entente
and so that to the my understanding
que li cuens fud mult tost en voie
that the count was much soon on way
d'esposer la, si Deus me voie.
of-wedding her so God me may-see

Eth vos les noces e la joie,
Behold you the wedding and the joy
si ne cuit que ja meis tel oie
so not I-think that ever more such I-may-hear
ne ne veie en tote ma vie;
nor not may-see in all my life
eth vos besoine sanz envie
behold you business without envy
e sanz contenz e sanz barat;
and without quarrels and without deceit
eth vos la terre en bon estat
behold you the land in good state
del conte e en bone esperance,
of-the count and in good hope
qui esteit niés le rei de France
who was nephew (of-)the king of France
e niés le preu rei de Engletere.
and nephew (of-)the worthy king of England
Li coens envoia par la terre,
The count sent through the land
a Acre e a Jaffe e aillors,
to Acre and to Jaffa and elsewhere
saisir les chastels e les turs
to-seize the castles and the towers
e faire les a lui respondre,
and to-make them to him answer
e fist crier l'ost e somondre.
and made cry the-host and summon

E furent somons li baron
And were summoned the barons
a aler prendre le Daron.
to go to-take the Daron
Quant li coens ot ses noces faites
When the count had his wedding made
e totes ses genz a lui traites,
and all his folk to him drawn
lors velt al los de son barnage
then wishes by-the advice of his baronage
e des Franceis de son lignage
and of-the French of his lineage
sa gent tote a Acre amener,
his folk all to Acre to-bring
ahernescher e atorner,
to-equip and to-array
e achater orge e anone
and to-buy barley and provisions
por chevalcher vers Eschaloine.
for to-ride toward Ascalon
Lors lessa a Sur bones guardes,
Then left at Tyre good guards
qui guaiterent par les anguardes
who watched through the lookouts
et la citié e la contree,
and the city and the country
que male gent n'i fust entree.
that evil folk not-there should-be entered
Li quens mena o lui sa femme,
The count led with him his wife

qui iert blanche com une gemme.
who was white as a gem
Eth vos l'ost de Sur esmeue,
Behold you the-host from Tyre moved
eth vos la novele seue
behold you the news known
a Acre que li cuens veneit;
at Acre that the count came
eth vos que chescons se teneit
behold you that each-one himself held
del conte a si tres bien paié
of-the count to so very well paid
que a grant paine erent apaié
that with great pain were appeased
ne nuit ne jor de joie faire.
nor night nor day of joy making
La veissiez si riche affaire,
There you-might-have-seen so rich business
les processions assemblees
the processions assembled
et les rues encortinees,
and the streets hung-with-curtains
les encensiers par les fenestres
the censers through the windows
tot pleins d'encens e par les estres!
all full of-incense and through the galleries
E tote la gent de la vile,
And all the folk of the town
plus ou pres de seisante mile,
more or near of sixty thousand

tot armé d'Acre s'en issirent
all armed from-Acre themselves-thence went-out
encontre lui tant qu'il le virent:
toward him until that-they him saw
ço fud signe qu'a lui veneient
this was sign that-to him they-came
e que a dreit seignor le teneient.
and that for right lord him they-held
Li clerc al moster le menerent,
The clerks to-the minster him led
les reliques lui aporterent,
the relics to-him brought
la seinte croiz baissier li firent,
the holy cross kiss him they-made
e il e molt genz i offrirent.
and he and many folk there offered
Desqu'al paleis le convoierent,
Until-to-the palace him escorted
si faitement le herbergerent;
so in-manner him lodged
la tint li coens si riche ostel:
there held the count so rich house
toz jorz eusse jo autretel!
all days might-have I such
Quant li cuens fu saissi de Sur,
When the count was seized of Tyre
e d'Acre e de Jaffe et d'Arsur,
and of-Acre and of Jaffa and of-Arsuf
lors fud li reis Guis sanz realme,
then was the king Guy without realm

qui tanz cops eut sor le hiaume,
who so-many blows had upon the helmet
e qui tant l'aveit comparé,
and who so-much it-had paid-for
et ore se veit esguaré,
and now himself sees astray
cil qui soffri tantes enjures
he who suffered so-many injuries
e tantes granz mesaventures,
and so-many great misadventures
e non pas por ses solz pechiez,
and not at-all for his only sins
car nus reis n'iert mielz entechiez,
for any king not-was better endowed
fors d'une teche qu'il aveit,
except of-a flaw which-he had
cele que nul mal ne saveit,
that that any ill not knew
cele que l'em claime simplesce;
that which one calls simplicity
c'ert li reis qui par sa proesce
it-was the king who by his prowess
aveit la citié d'Acre assise
had the city of-Acre besieged
quant li Sarazin l'orent prise.
when the Saracens it-had taken
Si avint einz icel contemple
So befell before that time
aveient li seignor del Temple
had the lords of-the Temple

la terre de Cypre achatee
the land of Cyprus bought
al rei qui l'aveit comquestee;
from-the king who it-had conquered
mais li marchez fud puis desfeit,
but the bargain was after undone
si que li reis Guis en fud feit
so that the king Guy thereof was made
9125 après empereres e sires,
after emperor and lord
si li fud alques grant remires.
so to-him was somewhat great amends
El contemple que li marchis
In-the time that the marquis
fud a Sur des cotels ocis,
was at Tyre by-the knives killed
en icel point e puis e primes
at that point and after and first
9130 e par plusors feiz le veimes
and by several times it we-saw
qu'al rei d'Engletere veneient
that-to-the king of-England came
messager qui mal lui feseient,
messengers who ill to-him did
car li un le desconfortouent
for the some him discomforted
e li autre le asseurouent;
and the others him assured
9135 li uns diseit qu'il s'en venist,
the one said that-he himself-thence should-come

li autre dist qu'il se tenist
the other said that-he himself should-hold
e demorast al Deu servise:
and should-remain in-the God service
issi parlouent par devise;
thus they-spoke by turns
li uns li diseit que sa terre
the one to-him said that his land
esteit en bone pais sanz guerre;
was in good peace without war
li autre li diseit sanz dote
the other to-him said without doubt
qu'en li aveit troblee tote,
that-one to-him had troubled all
si que li un ço li diseient
so that the ones this to-him said
que li autre lui desdiseient;
which the others to-him gainsaid
si ne fait pas a merveillier
so not makes at-all to marvel
s'il ne se saveit conseillier,
if-he not himself knew-how to-counsel
ne s'il esteit en grant doutance
nor if-he was in great fear
por le retorn le rei de France;
for the return (of-)the king of France
car l'en dit qu'il ad mal matin
for one says that-he has bad morning
senz faille qui ad mal veisin.
without fail who has bad neighbor

The Taking of the Daron

XV

While the French gather at Acre, Richard sends his petraries to the Daron by sea and lays siege with only his own men, he and his companions carrying the beams on their shoulders through the sand. On the fourth day, a Friday, the Turks offer to surrender, Richard refuses, and the great tower falls to petrary and mine; Seguin Barre is first in, the banners go up, and sixty Turks die. The garrison yields, forty Christian captives are freed, and on the eve of Pentecost the Turks are led down bound. Henry of Champagne and the French arrive too late, and Richard gives Henry the castle. The Turks abandon the Fier, and John of Alencon brings word of troubles in England; Richard says he will go home, but the barons resolve to march on Jerusalem, and the host rejoices.

Endementers que li Franceis,
Meanwhile that the French
dont jo aveie parlé ançois,
of-whom I had spoken before
erent a Acre e s'aprestouent
were at Acre and themselves-prepared
d'osteier e se herneschouent,
of-making-war and themselves equipped
li coens Henris e li baron,
the count Henry and the barons
por estre al siege del Daron,
for to-be at-the siege of-the Daron
e li reis eissi de Eschalone,
and the king went-out from Ascalon
el non Deu qui toz les biens done,
in-the name (of-)God who all the goods gives
qu'il ne voleit pas tant targier,
for-he not wished at-all so-much to-tarry

einz fist ses perieres chargier
rather made his petraries load
e mener al Daron par mer,
and lead to-the Daron by sea
e fist ses bones genz armer,
and made his good folk arm
e prist serjanz a ses soudees,
and took sergeants at his wages
qui richement erent donees,
which richly were given
e fist par toz les chastels metre
and made through all the castles put
d'iloc entor e entremetre
from-there around and set-about
de guarder les e de guaitier,
of guarding them and of watching
e de par nuit eschelgaitier,
and of by night keeping-watch
que les carvanes n'i passasent,
that the caravans not-there should-pass
ne que li Turc i recetassent
nor that the Turks there should-shelter
al Daron, si com il soleient,
at-the Daron so as they were-wont
par quei meint mal feit nus aveient.
by which many-a ill done us they-had
Eth vos que li rois fu montez,
Behold you that the king was mounted
Richarz, ou tant avoit buntez.
Richard where so-much had goodnesses

Od sul les genz de son demaine
With only the folk of his demesne
vint al Daron un diemaine.
came to-the Daron a Sunday
Eth le vos devant le Daron:
Behold him you before the Daron
la se tindrent tuit li baron,
there themselves held all the barons
mais si petit de gent aveient
but so little of folk they-had
que li reis ne il ne saveient
that the king nor they not knew
de la quel part il l'aseissent;
from the which side they it-should-besiege
car se tut entor s'espandissent
for if all around themselves-should-spread
e li Turc feissent saillie
and the Turks should-make sally
ou que lor ost fust assaillie,
or that their host were assailed
il ne peussent pas soffire,
they not could at-all suffice
ainz les convenist desconfire;
rather them would-behoove to-rout
e por ço a une part se trestrent
and for this to one side themselves drew

* * *

(lacuna)

e herdeierent e hoberent
and jostled and budged
tant qu'el chastel trestuit entrerent
until that-into-the castle all entered
e atornerent lor defenses
and arranged their defenses
e mistrent i cures e penses
and put there cares and thoughts
e seelerent bien lor porte,
and sealed well their gate
que il teneient a mult forte.
which they held to very strong
Quant la porte as Turs fu fermee
When the gate to-the Turks was shut
e lor genz dedenz enseree
and their folk within enclosed
eth vos les perieres venues
behold you the petraries come
e hors des veissels descendues,
and out of-the vessels unloaded
e par menbres mises a tere,
and by members put on land
e li vaillanz reis d'Engletere
and the valiant king of-England
si compainon e il meismes,
his companions and he himself
porterent as cols, ço veimes,
carried on-the necks this we-saw
les fusz e les trefs des perieres,
the shafts and the beams of-the petraries

tut a pié a suillentes chieres
all on foot with sweating faces
par le sablon pres d'une liuue,
through the sand near of-a league
chargié come cheval ou yuue.
loaded as horse or mare
Eth vos les perieres dresciees
Behold you the petraries raised
e as conestables livrees:
and to-the constables delivered
li rois en ot une en baillie
the king thereof had one in keeping
don la grant tur fud assaillie;
whereby the great tower was assailed
li Normant, la gent de valur,
the Normans the folk of worth
i orent tut par els la lur;
there had all by themselves the theirs
e li Peitevin, ço me semble,
and the Poitevins this to-me seems
i orent une tuit ensemble.
there had one all together
Totes treis al chastel jeterent,
All three at-the castle threw
e li Turc s'en espoenterent,
and the Turks themselves-thereof were-frightened
u molt deust avoir defense
where much ought have defense
de fort chastel e de despense;
of strong castle and of expense

mais li reis le fist asaillir
but the king it made assail
e nuit e jor sanz defaillir,
and night and day without failing
e les feseit tant travillier
and them made so-much toil
qu'il s'en poeient merveillier.
that-they themselves-thereof could marvel
Dis e set que turs que tureles
Ten and seven what towers what turrets
aveit el Daron forz e beles;
had in-the Daron strong and fair
une grant tur i ot plus mestre
a great tower there had more master
des autres e de plus fort estre;
than-the others and of more strong being
entur iert parfont li fossiez,
around was deep the ditch
si iert de l'une part pavez
so was on the-one side paved
e de l'autre iert roche naive;
and on the-other was rock native
mais pour fist lor gent baive,
but fear made their folk dismayed
qui ne s'en poeient fuir;
who not themselves-thence could flee
e li reis Richarz fist fuir
and the king Richard made dig

par desor terre sotilment
by upon earth subtly
tant qu'il furent al paviment
until that-they were at-the pavement
e que a force le rompirent,
and that by force it they-broke
e donc après le mur foirent
and then after the wall they-dug
e la terre ariere els jeterent.
and the earth back them threw
Les perieres as Turs jeterent,
The petraries at-the Turks threw
un mangonel lor depescierent
a mangonel to-them broke-up
que en la maistre tur drescierent,
which in the master tower they-set-up
dont molt furent il esmaié.
whereof much were they dismayed
Eth vos chastel bien essaié
Behold you castle well tried
en plusors manieres a prendre.
in several manners to take
La veissiez les Turs defendre
There you-might-have-seen the Turks defend
e as kerneals e as archieres,
and at-the battlements and at-the arrow-slits
e feroient noz genz as chieres,
and struck our folk in-the faces
car lor pilez espès pluvoent;
for their darts thick rained

mais si tost com il se movoent,
but so soon as they themselves moved
e nostre arbalestier guaitouent
and our crossbowmen watched
a descovert, e il jetouent
in-the open and they shot
sor les targes quant il traiouent,
upon the targes when they drew
sin nafroient tant e feroient
so-them wounded so-much and struck
que a dote s'osoient movoir,
that with doubt themselves-dared move
et erent a meschief por voir.
and were at mischief for true
Eth vos lor la porte fendue
Behold you to-them the gate split
et arse od feu e abatue
and burned with fire and struck-down
a la grant periere le rei;
by the great petrary (of-)the king
la veissiez gent od desrei
there you-might-have-seen folk with disorder
vigurusement assaillie
vigorously assailed
e esmaiee e mal baillie;
and dismayed and ill handled
car nuit e jor les travaillouent
for night and day them they-harassed
tant que trestut s'en esmaiouent.
until that all themselves-thereof dismayed

Li reis Richarz e si baron
The king Richard and his barons
seoient entur le Daron;
sat around the Daron
treis jorz pres a pres asaillirent
three days close by close they-assailed
nuit e jor, qu'il n'en deffaillirent,
night and day that-they not-thereof failed
e al quart jor, un vendresdi,
and at-the fourth day a Friday
virent li Turc dont jo vos di
saw the Turks whereof I to-you say
qu'il ne la poroient durer
that-they not it could last
ne les granz assalz endurer
nor the great assaults endure
dont il esteient esmaié,
whereof they were dismayed
e que maint nafré e plaié
and that many-a wounded and hurt
en ot par le chastel gisant,
thereof had through the castle lying
e que l'en les aloit tesant
and that one them went harrying
par desuz terre e par desus,
by beneath earth and by above
e que li reis iert el desus
and that the king was on-the upper-hand
de prendre les a poi de tente.
of taking them with little of trial

Lors ne firent plus longe atente,
Then not made more long waiting
fors que de tensier els parlerent
except that of parleying they spoke
e par treis Sarazins manderent
and by three Saracens sent
al rei Richart qu'il se rendreient
to-the king Richard that-they themselves would-yield
par tel covent qu'il s'en ireient,
by such covenant that-they themselves-thence would-go
saus lor cors e sauves lor vies
safe their bodies and safe their lives
e lor femmes e lor maisnies;
and their wives and their households
e li reis dist qu'il se teusent,
and the king said that-they themselves should-be-silent
defendisent sei s'il peussent.
should-defend themselves if-they could
Eth les vos al chastel ariere;
Behold them you to-the castle back
eth vos que la maistre periere
behold you that the master petrary
fiert e hurte a une torele,
strikes and batters at a turret
qui mult empoira lor querele.
which much worsened their cause
Si que la maistre tor chai:
So that the master tower fell
Deu le velt, e si eschai,
God it wishes and so it-befell

et ele iert desoz cerfoie,
and it was beneath dug-around
e lor gent iert tote foie.
and their folk was all foolish
D'iloes entor noz genz saillirent,
From-there around our folk leapt
si s'armerent, sis assaillirent;
so themselves-armed so-them assailed
et il se mistrent, ço me semble,
and they themselves put this to-me seems
en la maistre tur tuit ensemble;
into the master tower all together
mais de grant mal se porpenserent,
but of great ill themselves bethought
qui lor chevals esjareterent
who their horses hamstrung
que li cristiens nes eussent
that the Christians not-them should-have
ne que chevalchier les peussent.
nor that ride them could
La gent Deu el chastel monterent,
The folk (of-)God into-the castle mounted
e cil qui primes i entrerent,
and those who first there entered
Seguins Barrez fud li premiers,
Seguin Barre was the first
e Espiarz, uns escuiers,
and Espiart a squire
ne se tint pas de Seguin loinz;
not himself held at-all from Seguin far

li tierç fud Pieres li Gascoinz,
the third was Peter the Gascon
e d'autres en i pot aveir,
and of-others thereof there could have
dont jo ne poi les nons savoir.
whereof I not could the names know
Puis i entrerent les banieres,
Then there entered the banners
sin i ot de plusors manieres:
so-thereof there had of several manners
l'Estiene de Longchamp premiere
that-of-Stephen of Longchamp first
i entra, si n'iert pas entiere,
there entered so not-was at-all whole
anceis esteit mult depeciee;
rather was much torn
après icele i fud dresciee
after that there was raised
la le conte de Leicestre;
that (of-)the count of Leicester
e deseure le mur a destre
and above the wall at right
fud l'Andriu de Chavigni mise,
was that-of-Andrew of Chauvigny put
e ovec cele i fud assise
and with that there was set
après la mon seignor Reimont
after that (of-)my lord Raymond
le filz le Prince el mur a mont;
the son (of-)the Prince on-the wall to mount

e cil de Gienve e cil de Pise
and those of Genoa and those of Pisa
en i orent de mainte guise;
thereof there had of many-a manner
nos banieres es murs dresçouent
our banners on-the walls they-raised
e les lor contre val jetouent.
and the theirs toward below threw
Lors veissiez Turs detrenchier
Then you-might-have-seen Turks cut-to-pieces
e des aleoirs trebuchier
and from-the wall-walks tumble
e entreprendre e atraper,
and catch and trap
ocire et ferir e fraper
kill and strike and smite
tant qu'el chastel, ço est veir provez,
so-much that-in-the castle this is true proved
en ot seisante mort trovez,
thereof had sixty dead found
cels qui a la grant tur faillirent,
those who at the great tower failed
qui a tens ne s'i recoillirent.
who in time not themselves-there gathered
Li Sarazin en la grant tur
The Saracens in the great tower
erent, si guaitoient entur,
were so watched around

e virent lor chastel tut pris
and saw their castle all taken
e lor Turs morz e entrepris,
and their Turks dead and caught
et virent les targes drescier
and saw the targes raise
contre la tur e adrescier
against the tower and set
por trenchier le mur par desuz,
for to-cut the wall by beneath
si erent el desus ***
so were on-the upper-hand (lacuna)
e que l'amirail qui sucorre
and that the-emir who succor
les deveit les laisseit encure,
them ought them left come-to-grief
qui Caisac esteit nomez,
who Kaysac was named
uns Sarazins mult renomez;
a Saracen much renowned
et quant il virent tot a cors,
and when they saw all at course
que il n'avreient nul sucurs,
that they not-would-have any succor
si se rendirent tut a tant
so themselves yielded all at that
al rei Richart le combatant,
to-the king Richard the fighter
sanz contredit chaitifs esclaves,
without gainsaying captives slaves

pris e conquis e maz e aves;
taken and conquered and checkmated and cast-down
e bien quarante cristiens
and well forty Christians
qui ierent tenu en liens
who were held in bonds
i orent les vies sauvees
there had the lives saved
e guaranties e tensees.
and guaranteed and protected
E li reis fist les Turs guaitier
And the king made the Turks watch
en la tur e eschelgaitier
in the tower and keep-watch
tote la nuit del vendresdi,
all the night of-the Friday
e al matin, le samedi,
and at-the morning the Saturday
la vigille de Pentecoste,
the vigil of Pentecost
la haute feste qui tant coste,
the high feast which so-much costs
les fist tosz del chastel descendre,
them made all from-the castle descend
e tut errant sanz plus atendre
and all at-once without more awaiting
les adossa a tel ados
them backed to such backing
que les mains deriere le dos
that the hands behind the back

lor fist lier estreitement,
to-them made bind tightly
si qu'il braeient durement.
so that-they howled hard
Et issi fud li Darons pris
And thus was the Daron taken
que a cels torna a grant pris
which to those turned to great worth
cui mult pesast s'il nel preissent
whom much would-have-weighed if-they not-it had-taken
ainceis que li Franceis venissent,
before that the French should-come
e mult en fussent il mari.
and much thereof would-have-been they grieved
Eths vos od le conte Henri
Behold you with the count Henry
les Franceis qui esperonoent,
the French who spurred
qui a tens venir i quidouent,
who in time to-come there thought
mais trop a tart venu i erent;
but too-much at late come there were
e li reis e sa gent alerent
and the king and his folk went
encontre son neveu le conte.
toward his nephew the count
Que vos en fereie long conte,
What to-you thereof would-I-make long tale
fors que grant joie s'entrefirent?
except that great joy themselves-made-each-other

Et li reis, si que mult le virent,
And the king so that many it saw
le Daron al conte dona
the Daron to-the count gave
e de son conquest l'estrena.
and of his conquest him-presented
E fumes illoc a sujor
And we-were there at rest
de la Pentecoste le jor,
of the Pentecost the day
e le lunsdi nos en alames
and the Monday we thence went
vers Eschalone e trespassames
toward Ascalon and passed
par mi Gazres dreit a Furbie,
through midst Gaza straight to Furbia
ou li reis e sa compaignie
where the king and his company
icele nuit se herbergerent;
that night themselves lodged
e l'autre gent tant chevalcherent
and the-other folk so-much rode
qu'a Eschalone s'en revindrent,
that-to Ascalon themselves-thence came-back
ou li Franceis grant feste tindrent.
where the French great feast held
Un poi après vint a Furbie
A little after came to Furbia
al rei d'Engletere une espie,
to-the king of-England a spy

que veneit de vers le Fier
who came from toward the Fier
por les Sarazins espier,
for the Saracens to-spy
e dist qu'al Fier en aveit
and said that-at-the Fier thereof had
mil ou plus, si qu'il le savoit,
thousand or more so that-he it knew
qui od Caisac sujornerent,
who with Kaysac stayed
et que le chastel atornerent
and that the castle they-arrayed
contre cristiens a defendre;
against Christians to defend
et li preuz reis sanz plus atendre
and the worthy king without more awaiting
monta e tote l'ost ensemble,
mounted and all the-host together
e jurent la nuit, ço me semble,
and lay the night this to-me seems
a la canoie as Estornels.
at the cane-brake of-the Starlings
L'endemain fud li matin bials,
The-next-day was the morning fair
si murent al soleil levant,
so moved at-the sun rising
e errerent jusque devant
and journeyed until before

le Fier, que li Turc deveient
the Fier which the Turks ought
tenir contr'els, mais no feseient,
hold against-them but not-it did
fors deus Turs que il i troverent
except two Turks whom they there found
que il ovec els en menerent;
whom they with them thence led
ainz orent les portes fendues
rather had the gates split
od feu grezeis e abatues,
with fire Greek and struck-down
e orent le chastel laissié,
and had the castle left
e s'en fuioient esleissié,
and themselves-thence fled at-full-tilt
quant il sorent que l'ost venoit,
when they knew that the-host came
car del Daron lor suveneit,
for of-the Daron to-them remembered
dont noveles eurent eues
whereof news had had
qu'il iert pris e lor genz perdues;
that-it was taken and their folk lost
e por ço le chastel leisserent.
and for this the castle they-left
E nostre gent tant chevalcherent
And our folk so-much rode

qu'il virent le chastel senz guardes:
that-they saw the castle without guards
lors monterent par les anguardes
then they-mounted through the lookouts
pur surveir se il trovassent
for to-oversee if they should-find
nul Turc a qui il se mellassent;
any Turk with whom they themselves should-fight
e quant il plus n'en i troverent
and when they more not-thereof there found
a giste ariere retornerent,
to lodging back returned
e revindrent a la canoie
and came-back to the cane-brake
des Estornels tote lor voie.
of-the Starlings all their way
A la canoie iert l'ost tendue,
At the cane-brake was the-host pitched
si come j'ai l'ovre entendue,
so as I-have the-work understood
quant del Fier se fud retraite;
when from-the Fier itself was withdrawn
si dit cil qui l'estorie traite
so says he who the-history treats
qu'al rei vint la uns messagiers
that-to-the king came there a messenger
qui de sa terre iert estagiers,
who of his land was resident

uns clers, c'ert Johans d'Alençon:
a clerk it-was John of-Alencon
cil dist al rei que la tençon
he said to-the king that the quarrel
e la grant brubuille e la guerre
and the great turmoil and the war
ert surse par tote Engletere
was arisen through all England
de ses barons e de son frere
of his barons and of his brother
ki por la reine sa mere
who for the queen his mother
ne voleit fors son voleir faire,
not wished except his will to-do
e que tant iert alé l'affaire
and that so-much was gone the-business
e tant aveit male semblance
and so-much had evil seeming
des messagiers le rei de France
of-the messengers (of-)the king of France
que en Engletere enveeit
which into England he-sent
a son frere qu'il desvoieit
to his brother whom-he led-astray
e voloit a lui alier,
and wished to him to-ally
qu'il osoit testimonier
that-he dared to-bear-witness

ke se il tost ne s'en veneit
that if he soon not himself-thence came
que la terre que il teneit
that the land which he held
en sereit bien tost retaillee
thereof would-be well soon cut-off
a cels cui il l'aveit baillee;
to those whom he it-had given
et el si fud en son repaire:
and it so was in its haunt
encor n'est mal ki n'i repaire,
yet not-is ill which not-there returns
com il parut en Normendie,
as it appeared in Normandy
quin fud povre, guaste e mendie.
who-thereby was poor wasted and beggared
Quant li reis oi les noveles
When the king heard the news
qui n'esteient bones ne beles,
which not-were good nor fair
lores fud pensis, maz e murnes,
then was pensive checkmated and gloomy
e dist a sei: «S'or ne retornes,
and said to himself If-now not thou-return
veirement as terre perdue.»
truly hast-thou land lost
Es vos sa pansee esperdue,
Behold you his thought distraught

tant qu'il dist estroseement
so-much that-he said strongly
que il s'en ireit veirement;
that he himself-thence would-go truly
e quant les bones genz l'oirent,
and when the good folk it-heard
sachiez que point ne s'esjoirent.
know that at-all not themselves-rejoiced
Li uns les noveles savoient
The ones the news knew
par l'ost, li autre non fesoient;
through the-host the others not did
li uns diseit: «Il s'en ira,»
the one said He himself-thence will-go
e l'autre diseit: «Nu fera.»
and the-other said Not-it will-do
Si ennemi mult le voloient,
His enemies much it wished
mais si ami le desvoloient,
but his friends it wished-not
car s'onor fust mult abaissiee
for his-honor would-be much lowered
s'il eust la terre laissee
if-he had the land left
en autre point qu'il ne deust
in other point than-he not ought
e que plus bien feit n'i eust.
and that more good deed not-there had

Eth vos que illoc ou il erent
Behold you that there where they were
que tuit li baron s'asemblerent,
that all the barons themselves-assembled
Franceis, Norman e Peitevin,
French Norman and Poitevin
Engleis, Mansel e Angevin:
English Manceau and Angevin
conseil pristrent que il fereient,
counsel took what they would-do
tant qu'il distrent que il ireient,
so-much that-they said that they would-go
que que li reis Richarz feist,
whatever that the king Richard should-do
n'ou qu'il alast, ne qu'il deist,
nor-where that-he should-go nor what-he should-say
en Jerusalem tut ensemble.
into Jerusalem all together
Eth vos que ne sai qui s'en emble,
Behold you that not I-know who himself-thence steals-away
e vent as genz de l'ost e conte
and comes to-the folk of the-host and tells
que li haut home e que li conte
that the high men and that the counts
al parlement tuit dit aveient
at-the parley all said had
que Jersalem asejereient.
that Jerusalem they-would-besiege

Eth vos en l'ost joie venue
Behold you into the-host joy come
et en grant gent et en menue
and in great folk and in small
tel esperance e tel leesce,
such hope and such gladness
tel luminaire e tel noblesce
such light and such nobleness
qu'en l'ost n'aveit nul cristien,
that-in the-host not-had any Christian
haut ne bas, joefne n'ancien,
high nor low young nor-old
que n'esjoist od grant desrei,
who not-should-rejoice with great disorder
fors sulement le cors le rei,
except only the body (of-)the king
qui point ne s'iert esleeciez,
who at-all not himself-was gladdened
ainz se chocha tut coreciez
rather himself lay-down all angered
des noveles qu'il ot oies;
by-the news which-he had heard
mais de l'ost les genz esjoies
but of the-host the folk rejoiced
esteient si que tant dancierent
were so that so-much they-danced
que après mie nuit se cochierent.
that after mid night themselves lay-down

The Chaplain's Sermon

XVI

In June the host moves to Ibelin, by Hebron where Saint Anne was born, plagued by gnats that leave the pilgrims looking like lepers. Richard, troubled by the news from England, sits brooding in his tent, and his chaplain William of Poitiers weeps outside it. Called in, the chaplain tells Richard what the host says, that he means to abandon the land, and recalls the king's victories, from Poitou and Hautefort to Messina, Cyprus, the great ship before Acre, the siege, and the Daron. Richard says nothing, and the next day tells the barons he will not leave before Easter. His crier proclaims it, and the host rejoices.

Ço fud en join quand soleil lieve,
This was in June when sun rises
qui la rosee guaste e grieve,
which the dew wastes and harms
que tote chose s'esbanoie,
that every thing itself-delights
lors s'esmut l'ost de la canoie
then itself-moved the-host from the cane-brake
par mi les plains tut contre val
through midst the plains all toward below
vers Ybelin de l'Ospital,
toward Ibelin of the-Hospital
joste Ebron, emprès la valee,
beside Hebron near the valley
illoc ou seinte Anne fud nee,
there where saint Anne was born

la mere a la seinte pucele
the mother of the holy maiden
qui est mere Deu e ancele.
who is mother (of-)God and handmaid
La vi l'ost tote esleicee
There saw-I the-host all gladdened
de l'ovre qui iert fiancee,
by the-work which was pledged
que vers Jerusalem ireient
that toward Jerusalem they-would-go
e la citié asiegereient;
and the city would-besiege
mais anceis mult la desirerent
but before much it desired
tels genz qui unques n'i entrerent,
such folk who ever not-there entered
e li povre e li riche oveques.
and the poor and the rich with-them
Oiez que lor avint illoques,
Hear what to-them befell there
une estrange comfession
a strange confession
e fiere persecucion:
and fierce persecution
en l'ost vindrent unes muschetes
into the-host came some little-flies
que si esteient petitettes
which so were tiny
e si sutils com estenceles,
and so subtle as sparks

que nus apelons scinceneles.
which we call gnats
De celes par mi la contree
Of those through midst the country
par fud l'ost la si encontree,
much was the-host there so met
issi m'ait seint Celerins,
so me-may-help saint Celerin
qu'els mordeient les pelerins,
that-they bit the pilgrims
mains, col e gorge e front e face,
hands neck and throat and forehead and face
qu'il n'i aveit plein poing d'espace
that-it not-there had full fist of-space
ou il n'eust par tut bocettes
where it not-had through all little-swellings
de la morsure des muchettes,
from the bite of-the little-flies
que chescons, vielz ou damoisels,
that each-one old or young-man
sembloit a estre tut mesels;
seemed to be all lepers
e lor covint fere visieres
and to-them behooved to-make visors
e covrir lor cols e lor chieres.
and to-cover their necks and their faces
Ceste paine illoc endurerent,
This pain there they-endured
mais toz jorz se recomforterent
but all days themselves comforted

par l'emprise e par l'esperance
by the-undertaking and by the-hope
dont il esteient en fiance.
whereof they were in pledge
Mais li reis iert pensis e tristes
But the king was pensive and sad
des noveles que vos oistes,
of-the news which you heard
que toz jorz pensot en sa tente
for all days he-thought in his tent
e en penser metteit s'entente.
and in thinking put his-attention
Un jor que li reis iert assis
One day that the king was seated
en sa tente cois e pensis,
in his tent quiet and pensive
vit trespasser devant l'entree
he-saw pass before the-entrance
un chapelein de sa contree:
a chaplain of his country
ço esteit Guillames de Peitiers,
this was William of Poitiers
qui al rei parlast volenters,
who to-the king would-have-spoken willingly
se il l'osast araisoner;
if he him-had-dared to-address
mais ne li osot mot soner,
but not to-him dared word to-sound

car il n'en iert ne liu ne termes.
for it not-thereof was nor place nor term
Li chapeleins a chaudes lermes
The chaplain with hot tears
plorot et esteit en grant ire;
wept and was in great wrath
mais il n'osoit pas al rei dire
but he not-dared at-all to-the king to-say
ço dont la gent de l'ost parlerent
this whereof the folk of the-host spoke
de lui, e dont il le blamerent:
of him and whereof they him blamed
por les noveles d'Engletere
for the news of-England
voleit leisser la seinte terre,
he-wished to-leave the holy land
povre e guaste e desconseillee,
poor and wasted and at-a-loss
ainçois qu'il l'eust conseillee.
before that-he it-had counseled
Li rois apela le proveire,
The king called the priest
si li dist: «Dites moi la veire,
so to-him said Say me the truth
par la fei que vos me devez.
by the faith which you me owe
Dont vos est cist curuz levez
Whence to-you is this wrath raised
dont jo vos ai veu plurer?
whereof I you have seen weep

Dites le moi sanz demorer.»
Say it me without delaying
E li prestres lui respondi,
And the priest to-him answered
si que gueres n'i atendi,
so that much not-there he-waited
tot en plorant od voiz serie:
all in weeping with voice calm
«Sire, jo nel vos dirai mie
Lord I not-it to-you shall-say at-all
devant que asseuré m'avrez
before that assured me-you-will-have
que malveis gré ne me savrez.»
that ill will not me you-will-know
E li rois lui asseura
And the king him assured
de sa parole e l'en jura
of his word and to-him-thereof swore
que ja nul mal ne l'en voldreit
that ever any ill not to-him-thereof he-would-wish
en nul point ne en nul endroit.
in any point nor in any place
Cil li dist: «Sire, l'em vos blame,
He to-him said Lord one you blames
e par cest ost s'en vait la fame
and through this host itself-thence goes the fame
par tut de vostre retornee.
through all of your return
Ja n'avienge cele jornee
Ever not-may-come that day

que tele ovre aiez aprochiee!
that such work you-may-have approached
Ja ne vos seit el reprochiee
Ever not to-you be it reproached
ne loing ne pres, ne ci n'aillurs!
nor far nor near nor here nor-elsewhere
Remembre tei des granz honurs,
Remember thee of-the great honors
reis, que Deus t'at en tanz lius faites, 9595
king which God thee-has in so-many places done
qui serunt mes toz jorz retraites,
which will-be ever all days recounted
que onques a rei de ton eage
that ever to king of thy age
ne fist aveir mains de damage.
not made have less of damage
Reis, recorde tei que l'en conte,
King recall thee that one tells
quant jo te vi de Peitiers conte, 9600
when I thee saw of Poitiers count
c'onques n'ot nul si enveisié
that-ever not-had any so playful
veisin, si halt ne si preisié,
neighbor so high nor so prized
si de guerre te venist sus,
if of war to-thee should-come upon
que ne l'allasses en desus.
that not him-thou-shouldst-go on upper-hand

Remenbre tei des granz tençons
Remember thee of-the great quarrels
e des routes des Brabençons
and of-the troops of-the Brabancons
que desconfeis tantes feiz
which thou-routedst so-many times
a poi de gent e de conreiz.
with little of folk and of arrays
Remenbre tei de l'aventure
Remember thee of the-adventure
de la riche descomfiture,
of the rich discomfiture
et de Haltefort que rescussis,
and of Hautefort which thou-rescuedst
que li cuens de Seint Gile assis
which the count of Saint Gilles besieged
aveit, que tu desbaretas
had which thou routedst
e vileinement l'en jetas.
and basely him-thence threwest
Remenbre tei de ton realme
Remember thee of thy realm
que senz porter escu ne hiaume
which without carrying shield nor helmet
eus en pais e en quité,
thou-hadst in peace and in quittance
que nuls n'i aveit abité.
which anyone not-there had dwelt

Remenbre tei des granz emprises
Remember thee of-the great undertakings
de tantes genz que tu as prises,
of so-many folk whom thou hast taken
de Meschines que tu preis,
of Messina which thou tookest
des pruesces que tu feis
of-the prowesses which thou didst
quant tu matas la grifonaille
when thou checkmatedst the Griffon-rabble
qui te quidot prendre en bataille,
which thee thought to-take in battle
dont Dampnedeus te delivra,
whereof Lord-God thee delivered
e els a grant honte livra.
and them to great shame delivered
Remenbre tei de la pruesce,
Remember thee of the prowess
dont Deus t'estendi sa largesce,
whereof God thee-extended his largesse
que tu feis de Cypre prendre,
which thou didst of Cyprus taking
ço que nuls hom voleit enprendre,
this which no man wished to-undertake
ke en quinze jorz eus prise:
that in fifteen days thou-hadst taken
fors que de Deu ne vint l'emprise;
except that from God not came the-undertaking

e que l'empereur prison
and that the-emperor prisoner
preis e meis en prison.
thou-tookest and didst-put in prison
Reis, guarde qu'engin ne te fiere;
King guard that-trick not thee should-strike
menbre tei de la grant nef fiere
remember thee of the great ship proud
que en Acre ne pot entrer
which into Acre not could enter
quant Deus la te fist encontrer,
when God it thee made meet
ke tu preis o tes gualees
which thou tookest with thy galleys
od tut uit cent de genz armees,
with all eight hundred of folk armed
quant les serpenz furent noiees.
when the serpents were drowned
Remenbre tei quantes feiees
Remember thee how-many times
Deus t'a soliegié e soliege.
God thee-has relieved and relieves
Remenbre tei d'Acre e del siege
Remember thee of-Acre and of-the siege
ou tu venis a tens a prendre,
where thou camest in time to take
ou Deus te fist del tuen despendre
where God thee made of-the thine spend
tant que la citié fud rendue.
until that the city was surrendered

Bon reis, don n'as tu entendue
Good king then not-hast thou heard
l'espargne de la maladie
the-sparing of the sickness
qui au siege ert, leonardie,
which at-the siege was leonardie
dont li autre prince mureient,
whereof the other princes died
dont nuls mires nes sucureient?
whereof any physicians not-them would-succor
Reis, remenbre tei, e si guarde
King remember thee and so guard
la terre dont Deus t'at feit garde,
the land whereof God thee-has made guard
ke tote sor tei l'atorna,
that all upon thee it-arranged
quant li autre rei s'en torna.
when the other king himself-thence turned
Remenbre tei des cristiens
Remember thee of-the Christians
que tu getas hors des liens
whom thou threwest out of-the bonds
al Daron, que Turc en menouent,
at-the Daron whom Turks thence led
qui en cheitivisons alouent,
who into captivities went
quant Deus t'i fist si tost venir.
when God thee-there made so soon come
Reis, bien deusses retenir
King well thou-oughtest retain

que Deus t'at fait tantes bontez
that God thee-has done so-many goodnesses
dont tu iés en tel pris montez
whereby thou art in such worth mounted
que tu ne criems rei ne baron.
that thou not fearest king nor baron
Reis, car te menbre del Daron
King for thee remember of-the Daron
que tu preis en quatre jorz;
which thou tookest in four days
onc n'i fud plus longs ti sujorz.
ever not-there was more long thy stay
Remenbre tei de la grant presse
Remember thee of the great press
ou tu fus de la gent engresse,
where thou wast of the folk fierce
quant tu t'endormis par pechiez.
when thou thyself-fellest-asleep by sins
Menbre tei, reis bien entechiez,
Remember thee king well endowed
cum Deus t'en ot tost delivré.
how God thee-thereof had soon delivered
Or sumes tuit a mort livré;
Now are-we all to death delivered
or dient tuit, grand e menor,
now say all great and lesser
cil qui voleient vostre enor,
those who wished your honor

que vos soliez estre peres
that you were-wont to-be father
de la cristienté e freres,
of the Christendom and brother
e s'or la laissiez sanz aie
and if-now it you-leave without aid
donc est ele morte e traie.»
then is it dead and betrayed
Li clers ot dite sa parole
The clerk had said his word
et le rei tenu a escole
and the king held at school
et li ot issi sermoné.
and to-him had thus preached
Li reis ne li ot mot soné,
The king not to-him had word sounded
ne cil qui el pavillon sistrent
nor those who in-the pavilion sat
un mot de lor buche ne distrent;
a word from their mouth not said
mais li reis son penser dona
but the king his thought gave
a ço que il lui sermona;
to this which he to-him preached
si fud sa pensee esclarie.
so was his thought cleared
Eth vos l'endemain repairie
Behold you the-next-day returned

l'ost qui vint a hore de none
the-host which came at hour of nones
devant les barons d'Escalone;
before the barons of-Ascalon
si que chascons quidot sanz dote,
so that each-one thought without doubt
e li baron e l'ost trestote,
and the barons and the-host all
que li reis son ost atornast
that the king his host should-array
e que lores s'en retornast;
and that then himself-thence should-return
mais il retorna son corage
but he turned his heart
qu'il aveit eu del message
which-he had had from-the message
par Deu avant e par le prestre
by God before and by the priest
qui mostra raison de son estre.
who showed reason of his state
Tant, que vos direie autre conte?
So-much what to-you would-I-tell other tale
Qu'il dist a son neveu le conte,
That-he said to his nephew the count
as barons, al duc de Burgoine,
to-the barons to-the duke of Burgundy
que por besoing d'autre besoigne,
that for need of-other business
por messager ne por novele,
for messenger nor for news

ne por teriene querele
nor for earthly quarrel
devant Pasches ne s'en ireit
before Easter not himself-thence would-go
ne la terre ne guerpireit.
nor the land not would-abandon
Lors demanda son crieor,
Then asked his crier
Felippe, son banisseor,
Philip his proclaimer
si fist crier par Eschalone,
so made cry through Ascalon
en non celui qui les biens done,
in name of-him who the goods gives
que li reis estroseement
that the king strongly
diseit, son cors nomeement,
said his body namely
que desque a Pasques sujorreit
that until to Easter he-would-stay
en la terre, qu'il n'en turreit,
in the land that-he not-thence would-turn
e que tuit fussent apresté
and that all should-be prepared
od ço que Deus lor ot presté,
with this which God to-them had lent
e qu'en Jerusalem ireient
and that-into Jerusalem they-would-go
e que en cel point l'asejereient.
and that in that point it-they-would-besiege

Quant la criee fud oie,
When the cry was heard
eth vos la gent tote esjoie
behold you the folk all rejoiced
cume li oisels est de jur.
as the bird is at day
Lores s'aturnent sanz sujor,
Then themselves-array without stay
9725 ***
(lacuna)
chescons endreit sei s'adresçoit
each-one right-at himself himself-directed
vers Deu a mont el firmament
toward God to mount in-the firmament
e disoient, si Deus m'ament:
and they-said so God me-may-love
«Deus, vos peussoms gracier
God you may-we thank
9730 et aurer e mercier.
and worship and give-thanks
Or verroms nous vostre citié;
Now shall-see we your city
trop i ont li Turc abité.
too-much there have the Turks dwelt
Beneite seit or l'entente
Blessed be now the-intent
e la demoree e l'atente
and the delay and the-waiting

que chescon de nos ad ci faite
which each-one of us has here made
e la peine qu'il i at traite!»
and the pain which-he there has drawn
La veissiez gent anguisuse
There you-might-have-seen folk eager
de herneschier e cuveituse;
of equipping and covetous
e la petite gent menue,
and the small folk little
en cele iert tel joie venue
into that was such joy come
que chescons portot sa vitaille
that each-one carried his victuals
a son col e diseit sanz faille
on his neck and said without fail
que vitaille portoit assez
that victuals he-carried enough
tant que li mois seroit passez,
until that the month would-be passed
tant coveitouent l'ovre a faire.
so-much they-coveted the-work to do
E que direie d'altre affaire,
And what would-I-say of-other business
fors qui Deu sert, rien ne li coste?
except who God serves anything not to-him costs

The Second March on Jerusalem

XVII

After Pentecost the host leaves Ascalon, the knights carrying the poor pilgrims on their horses, and marches by Blanche Garde to the Toron of the Knights and Beit Nuba, where it waits a month for Henry, sent to Acre for the laggards. Richard rides at dawn to the spring of Emmaus, kills twenty Turks, takes Saladin's crier, and sees Jerusalem; there is panic in the city. Turks raid toward the French tents, and Robert of Bruges, a Hospitaller, is made to walk for breaking his order's rule. The Turks fall on the caravan's rear guard; Clarembaud of Montchablon flees, and Baldwin the Caron and Manasses of l'Isle are rescued only by the earl of Leicester.

Ço fud a close Pentecoste,
This was at close Pentecost
mien escient le samedi,
by-my knowledge the Saturday
que l'ost refud, si com jo di,
that the-host was-again so as I say
hors d'Escalone ensemble atraite,
out of-Ascalon together drawn
qui mult en fud de legier traite;
which much thereof was of ease drawn
car a chescon quant qu'il feseit
for to each-one as-much as-he did
l'agreoit e mult lui pleiseit.
it-pleased and much to-him pleased
Eth vus l'ost al matin meue;
Behold you the-host at-the morning moved
si ne cuit c'unques fust veue
so not I-think that-ever were seen

ost plus preuz ne mielz atornee;
host more worthy nor better arrayed
si errerent cele jornee
so journeyed that day
petite ovre por la chalur.
little work for the heat
La veissiez gent de valur
There you-might-have-seen folk of worth
faire honur e humilité
do honor and humility
et curteisie e charité;
and courtesy and charity
car cil qui les chevals aveient
for those who the horses had
ou tels bestes com il poeient
or such beasts as they could
les povres pelerins portouent,
the poor pilgrims carried
et a pié après els alouent
and on foot after them went
li haut home e li bachelier.
the high men and the young-knights
Illoc veissiez venteler
There you-might-have-seen flutter
tantes beles riches banieres
so-many fair rich banners
e penuncels de granz manieres.
and pennons of great manners

Tanz veissiez la filz de meres,
So-many you-might-have-seen there sons of mothers
tanz lignages, nevuz e freres,
so-many lineages nephews and brothers
tant bons haubercs, tant bons parpoinz,
so-many good hauberks so-many good doublets
tanz armees genz si qu'as poinz,
so-many armed folk so till-to-the fists
tantes lances e tantes glaives,
so-many lances and so-many spears
tant ne vit l'em el tens noz aives,
so-much not saw one in-the time (of-)our grandfathers
tantes cleres espees cheres,
so-many bright swords dear
tanz biaus serjanz od bones cheres!
so-many fair sergeants with good faces
La veissiez tanz genz errant,
There you-might-have-seen so-many folk journeying
tanz chevals balcenz e ferranz,
so-many horses piebald and iron-gray
tantes mules e tanz biaus muls,
so-many she-mules and so-many fair mules
tanz chevaliers preuz et seurs,
so-many knights worthy and sure
qu'il deussent al mien entendre
that-they ought at-the my understanding
bien quarante tels Turs atendre.
well forty such Turks await

Tant chevalcherent e errerent
So-much they-rode and journeyed
que un flum d'eve duze passerent,
that a river of-water sweet they-crossed
e que devant la Blanche Guarde
and that before the Blanche Garde
se tendi l'ost a la Deu guarde,
itself pitched the-host in the (of-)God keeping
cele nuitee premeraine.
that night first
Si ot esté un diemaine
So had been a Sunday
en l'ost mort um bon chevalier
in the-host dead a good knight
et un serjant preuz e legier
and a sergeant worthy and nimble
de deuz morsures de serpenz
of two bites of serpents
en mains terre que deus arpenz;
in less land than two acres
dont Deus les almes oie e veie,
whereof God the souls may-have and may-see
car il mururent en sa veie.
for they died in his way
Deus jorz illoques sujornames,
Two days there we-stayed
e puis al tierz nos en turnames,
and then at-the third we thence turned

e erra l'ost tote serree
and journeyed the-host all close
pleins les chemins de gent feree,
full the roads of folk armed
sanz encontre, senz enconbriers,
without encounter without hindrances
dreit al Thoron as Chevaliers.
straight to-the Toron of-the Knights
Une nuit illoques geumes,
A night there we-lay
e l'endemain ne nos meumes
and the-next-day not we moved
onques de si qu'après mangier;
ever from thus that-after eating
mais lors fist li reis deslogier
but then made the king dislodge
sei e sa gent de son demaine,
himself and his folk of his demesne
e vint avant son cors demaine;
and came forward his body own
si se fist tendre en destre en halt
so himself made pitch on right on high
un poi loinz del chastel Ernalt;
a little far from-the castle Arnald
e l'endemain vindrent illoques
and the-next-day came there
li Franceis e li autre oveques,
the French and the others with-them
e vindrent devers Bettenuble.
and came toward Beit-Nuba

bel tens feseit, non pas ennuble;
fair weather it-made not at-all cloudy
illoc fut l'ost et sujorna,
there was the-host and stayed
la dont l'ivern s'en retorna,
there whence (in-)the-winter itself-thence returned
por atendre Henri le conte,
for to-await Henry the count
e si vos dirai de quel conte:
and so you I-shall-tell of what account
car li reis le aveit enveié
for the king him had sent
a Acre al poeple desveié
to Acre to-the people led-astray
qui ne voleit en l'ost venir,
who not wished into the-host to-come
e por ço nos covint tenir
and for this us behooved to-hold
un mois ou plus por cele ovraine
a month or more for that work
joste le pié de la montaine
beside the foot of the mountain
par la ou li paumier soleient
through there where the palmers were-wont
revenir s'en, quant il voleient,
to-come-back themselves-thence when they wished
de la haute sainte citié
from the high holy city
dont estions desherité.
whereof we-were disinherited

Cel terme que nus sujurnames
That term that we stayed
en la valee ou nus turnames
in the valley where we turned
advindrent plusurs aventures
befell several adventures
et baraz e desconfitures
and deceits and discomfitures
que nus veimes avenir,
which we saw to-happen
si nos conveneit retenir.
so us behooved to-retain
Un jor avint que une espie,
One day befell that a spy
si cum l'um enquiert e espie,
so as one inquires and spies
vint al rei jus de la monjoie,
came to-the king down from the monjoie
dont jol vi revenir a joie,
whereof I-him saw come-back with joy
si dist que Sarazins aveit,
so said that Saracens there-had
e de verité le saveit,
and of truth it knew
a la montaigne, qui gueitouent
at the mountain who watched
le chemin por l'ost e gardouent.
the road for the-host and guarded
E li preuz reis einz jor monta,
And the worthy king before day mounted

si fud od lui quil reconta,
so was with him who-it recounted
que il quist les Turcs por lor mals
that he sought the Turks for their ills
jusqu'a la fontaine d'Esmals:
until-to the spring of-Emmaus
a l'enjornee les suzprist,
at the-daybreak them surprised
sin tua vint qu'il entreprist,
so-thereof killed twenty whom-he caught
e si prist le banisseor
and so took the proclaimer
Salahadin, son crieor,
(of-)Saladin his crier
celui seulement esparnia,
him only he-spared
e treis chameilz i gaigna,
and three camels there gained
e de bels Turquemans aveques;
and of fair Turcoman-horses with-them
si guaigna encore illoques
so gained still there
deus beles mules bien chargiees
two fair she-mules well loaded
de riches robes essaiees,
with rich robes choice
et especes e aloé.
and spices and aloe
Aveit es buges aloé.
Had in-the budgets placed

E les Sarazins chaça tant
And the Saracens chased so-much
par mi les montaines batant
through midst the mountains in-haste
que un en aconsiut en un val
that one thereof he-overtook in a valley
qu'il jeta mort jus del cheval,
whom-he threw dead down from-the horse
et vit, quant ot mort le culvert,
and saw when he-had killed the base-one
Jerusalem a descuvert;
Jerusalem in-the open
e eurent, ço nos conta l'am,
and they-had this to-us told one
tel pour en Jerusalem,
such fear in Jerusalem
que si li reis eust eu
that if the king had had
ensemble l'ost, que fust veu,
together the-host that were seen
Jerusalem fust aquitee
Jerusalem would-have-been freed
e de cristiens abitee,
and by Christians inhabited
que tuit li Sarazin eissirent
for all the Saracens went-out
de la citié e s'en fuirent,
from the city and themselves-thence fled
qui quidouent que l'ost venist,
who thought that the-host should-come

qu'il n'iert qui la citié tenist
for-it not-was who the city should-hold
ne qui dedenz osast remaindre
nor who within should-dare to-remain
por manacier ne por destreindre;
for threatening nor for constraining
e si aveit ja demandé
and so had already asked
Salahadin e comandé
Saladin and commanded
son meillor destrier aprester,
his best charger to-prepare
qu'il n'i osoit plus arester,
for-he not-there dared more to-stay
quant de voir sot par une espie
when of truth he-knew by a spy
que la grant ost ne veneit mie,
that the great host not came at-all
que Deu ne plot cele fiee
that God not pleased that time
qu'ele fust si bien aveiee.
that-she should-be so well set-on-her-way
En icel jor nomeement
On that day namely
ço fud seu membreement
this was known notably
que li reis fist sa chevalchee
that the king made his ride
e qu'il ot lor gent desbauchiee,
and that-he had their folk dispersed

deus cent Turs a val en la plaine
two hundred Turks to below in the plain
descendirent de la montaine
descended from the mountain
devers les tentes as Franceis
toward the tents of-the French
et estormirent l'ost ançois
and alarmed the-host before
que il se fussent remué,
that they themselves were stirred
e nos aveient la tué,
and us had there killed
trop pres de l'ost, si fud ontage,
too near of the-host so was shame
deus serjanz alez en forage;
two sergeants gone in foraging
e li Françeis al cri cururent
and the French to-the cry ran
dret as serjanz qui encururent,
straight to-the sergeants who came-to-grief
le Temple e cil de l'Ospital;
the Temple and those of the-Hospital
e li Turc lor tindrent estal
and the Turks to-them held stand
devant le pié de la montaine,
before the foot of the mountain
car molt se dotent a la plaine;
for much themselves fear in the plain
mais illoc endreit recovrerent,
but there right they-recovered

si c'un chevalier mort jeterent,
so that-a knight dead they-threw
dont li Franceis orent grant blame.
whereof the French had great blame
Mielz valt proesce c'or ne basme:
Better is-worth prowess than-gold nor balm
la fist un chevalier proesce
there did a knight prowess
de l'Ospital e grant vistesce,
of the-Hospital and great swiftness
s'il n'eust trespassé son ordre;
if-he not-had transgressed his order
mais proesce l'i fist amordre;
but prowess him-there made bite
Robert de Bruges ot a non.
Robert of Bruges had as name
Ja iert oltre le comfanon,
Already was beyond the gonfanon
si com il vint al cri poignant
so as he came to-the cry spurring
e de ses freres esloignant,
and from his brothers withdrawing
* * *
(lacuna)
ne que de l'ost se desjoinsissent,
nor that from the-host themselves should-separate
fud cil si coveitus del poindre
was he so covetous of-the spurring
que des autres l'estut desjoindre,
that from-the others him-behooved to-separate

et poinst un cheval merveillus
and spurred a horse marvelous
sur qu'il seeit e vigurus,
upon which-he sat and vigorous
dreit a un Turc qu'il ot esmé,
straight at a Turk whom-he had marked
qu'il vit trop cointe e acesmé;
whom-he saw too-much elegant and adorned
del grant air que il veneit,
from-the great force that he came
d'une fort lance qu'il teneit
with-a strong lance which-he held
li percha le casingan jaune
to-him pierced the padded-coat yellow
e mist par mi le cors une aune,
and put through midst the body an ell
si faitement lui eschai,
so in-manner to-him it-befell
e li Turs a tere chai;
and the Turk to earth fell
mais li cors n'i fud pas laissiez.
but the body not-there was at-all left
Atant eht vos tot esleissiez
At-that behold you all at-full-tilt
li meistre des Hospitaliers,
the master of-the Hospitallers
Garniers, li curteis chevalers,
Garnier the courteous knight

qui dist al frere: «Or descendez
who said to-the brother Now descend
del cheval, frere, et entendez
from-the horse brother and understand
coment ordre devez tenir.» 9935
how order you-ought keep
Sin covint le frere venir
So-thereof behooved the brother to-come
tot a pié jusques a lur tente,
all on foot as-far to their tent
si fud issi en tele atente
so was thus in such waiting
tant que hautes genz en proierent
until that high folk thereof prayed
le maistre e qu'il s'agenoillerent 9940
the master and that-they themselves-knelt
e distrent c'un don lor donast
and said that-a gift to-them he-should-give
e que al frere perdonast
and that to-the brother he-should-pardon
por la proesce qu'il ot faite,
for the prowess which-he had done
ço dont il aveit l'ordre enfraite,
this whereby he had the-order broken
tant qu'il en ot misericorde: 9945
so-much that-he thereof had mercy
«Mais gard, dist il, ne s'i amorde.»
But let-him-guard said he not himself-there should-bite

Le jor d'un mardi, ço me semble,
The day of-a Tuesday this to-me seems
iert que nostre carvane ensemble
was that our caravan together
veneit en l'ost tote chargee
came into the-host all loaded
de vitaille e aherneschiee,
with victuals and equipped
e la deveit le jur conduire,
and it ought the day lead
issi cum nos oimes dire,
so as we heard say
mes sires Feris de Viane;
my lord Ferry of Vienne
cil deveit garder la carvane
he ought guard the caravan
por le conte Henri, qui guarde
for the count Henry who guard
dut estre de la riere guarde,
ought be of the rear guard
mais il iert a Acre enveiez;
but he was to Acre sent
e mes sires Ferris preiez
and my lord Ferry prayed
aveit Baudoin le Caron
had Baldwin the Caron
e Clarembaut de Montchablon
and Clarembaud of Montchablon
que cel jor por lui la guardassent,
that that day for him it they-should-guard

que les genz folement n'errassent;
that the folk madly not-should-fare
mais folement le jur errerent,
but madly the day they-fared
si i ot de tels quil compererent.
so there had of such who-it paid-for
La esteit Manessiers de l'Ille,
There was Manasses of l'Isle
qui ot un cheval bauçant grisle,
who had a horse piebald gray
et Ricard d'Orques e Terri
and Richard of-Orques and Terry
i esteient el liu Ferri,
there were in-the place (of-)Ferry
Felippes e li compainon
Philip and the companions
seignor Baudoin le Caron,
(of-)lord Baldwin the Caron
Otes, e escuier plusor
Otho and squires several
furent od els en cel estor;
were with them in that battle
lor parent e lor ami erent
their kinsmen and their friends they-were
et a besoing le jur mustrerent.
and at need the day showed
Si cume cil de la grant rote,
So as those of the great troop
qui n'aveient de nului dote,
who not-had of anyone doubt

errouent com gent deschargiee,
journeyed as folk unburdened
la riere garde esteit chargiee,
the rear guard was loaded
la rote alout grant aleure;
the troop went great pace
et cil come preuz gent seure
and those as worthy folk sure
les siveient tot belement.
them followed all fairly
Eth vos que d'un embuchement
Behold you that from-an ambush
saillirent li Turc a cheval,
leapt the Turks on horse
e vindrent ferant contre val
and came striking toward below
tut qui ainz anz jusqu'a l'anguarde
all who first first as-far-as the-vanguard
dreit a cels de la riere guarde;
straight at those of the rear guard
tres par mi lor conrei se mistrent
right through midst their array themselves put
cil qui es ignels chevals sistrent
those who on-the swift horses sat
si durement qu'il les perchierent,
so hard that-they them pierced
e que iluec deschevaucherent
and that there they-unhorsed
le preu Baudoin le Caron;
the worthy Baldwin the Caron

mais il aveit queur de baron,
but he had heart of baron
si mist main a sa bone espee
so put hand to his good sword
que le jor fud mult redotee,
which the day was much dreaded
car li Tur suvent la sentirent.
for the Turks often it felt
A cele rescosse abatirent
At that rescue they-struck-down
Ricard d'Orques e puis Terri,
Richard of-Orques and then Terry
e Baudoins s'en combati
and Baldwin himself-thence fought
e tant que li suen le remistrent
and so-much that the his him put-back
sor un cheval que il conquistrent.
upon a horse which they conquered
La veissiez mult fier estur
There you-might-have-seen much fierce battle
e meint bel cop e meint trestor
and many-a fair blow and many-a turn
e meinte espee flambeier
and many-a sword flame
e meint esforz senz febleier
and many-a effort without weakening
e meinte encontre dure e bele,
and many-a encounter hard and fair
e meint cheval od voide sele;
and many-a horse with empty saddle

la veissiez les Turs embatre,
there you-might-have-seen the Turks rush-in
et gent bien defendre e combatre.
and folk well defend and fight
Quand li Turc un en abateient,
When the Turks one thereof struck-down
et li autre se rembateient
and the others themselves rushed-back
par mi la presse e le montouent
through midst the press and him mounted
e come preu s'entraidouent.
and as worthy themselves-helped-each-other
Mais la meslee iert mespartie;
But the melee was ill-divided
car cil de la nostre partie
for those of the our side
esteient si entr'els noié
were so among-them drowned
qu'il ne pot pas estre noié
that-it not could at-all be denied
que maint des contes n'i chaist
that many-a of-the counts not-there should-fall
e que trop ne lor meschaist:
and that too-much not to-them should-go-ill
car li pilet as Turs voloient,
for the darts of-the Turks flew
qui lor chevals lur afoloient.
which their horses to-them maimed

Eth vos que tels cops est cheuz
Behold you that such blow is fallen
que Baudoins refud cheuz;
that Baldwin was-again fallen
si fist un suen serjant descendre,
so made a his sergeant dismount
que trop ot feit de sei defendre.
who too-much had done of himself defending
Baudoins el cheval monta,
Baldwin on-the horse mounted
si qu'il meimes reconta,
so as-he himself recounted
qu'a mult petite demuree
that-at very little delay
vit celui la teste copee
saw him the head cut-off
ki son cheval li ot presté.
who his horse to-him had lent
Illoc esteient aresté,
There were halted
et illoc fud Felippes pris,
and there was Philip taken
compain Baudoin, qui grant pris
companion (of-)Baldwin who great worth
i conquist de tuz qui i erent;
there conquered of all who there were
e ovec Felippe en menerent
and with Philip thence led
un preu serjant qu'a force pristrent,
a worthy sergeant whom-by force they-took

e le frere Richard ocistrent.
and the brother (of-)Richard killed
La veissiez dure bataille:
There you-might-have-seen hard battle
a champ malé erent a taille
in field cursed were at cutting
Baudoin e si compaignon,
Baldwin and his companions
e Clarembaut de Montchablon
and Clarembaud of Montchablon
les aveit guerpiz e laissiez
them had abandoned and left
e s'en fui tut esleissiez
and himself-thence fled all at-full-tilt
des que il vit les Turs venir.
since that he saw the Turks come
La veissiez estal tenir
There you-might-have-seen stand hold
a Baudoin, qu'il rabatirent,
to Baldwin whom-they struck-down-again
e tant de maces le batirent
and so-much with maces him beat
que por poi ne fud afolez,
that for little not was maimed
e li sanc en esteit volez
and the blood thereof was flown
par le nes e par mi sa buche,
through the nose and through midst his mouth
e s'espee ert tote rebuche
and his-sword was all blunted

et esgroinee e depechiee.
and notched and broken
Lors escria a voix hauciee
Then cried with voice raised
Manessier de l'Isle le preuz,
Manasses of l'Isle the worthy
qui les Turs descomfisoit tuz:
who the Turks routed all
«Manassier, larrez me vus donques?» 10055
Manasses will-leave me you then
Et mes sire Manassier onques
And my lord Manasses ever
ne cessa, ainz l'ala rescorre.
not ceased rather him-went to-rescue
La veissiez tanz Turs acure
There you-might-have-seen so-many Turks run-up
que Manessier jus abatirent
that Manasses down struck
del cheval, e tant le batirent 10060
from-the horse and so-much him beat
et le laidirent et blescierent,
and him insulted and wounded
que de la jambe lui trenchierent
that of the leg to-him they-cut
le meistre os jusqu'a la moole,
the master bone until-to the marrow
e erent perdu en la fole
and were lost in the crowd

e Baudoins et il ovecques,
and Baldwin and he with-him
quant Deus lor enveia illoques
when God to-them sent there
le preu conte de Leicestre,
the worthy count of Leicester
qui point n'aveit seu lor estre.
who at-all not-had known their state
Li coens si com il vint poignant
The count so as he came spurring
feri un Turc en ataignant,
struck a Turk in overtaking
si durement le descrucha
so hard him unhorsed
que li Saracins tresbucha
that the Saracen tumbled
par en sum le col de sa beste,
through on top the neck of his beast
e Ançons l'en trencha la teste,
and Anso him-thence cut the head
compainz Estiene de Longchamp,
companion (of-)Stephen of Longchamp
si qu'el vola en mi le champ;
so that-it flew into mid the field
et mis sire Estienes meismes
and my lord Stephen himself
le fist mult bien e puis e primes;
it did very well and after and first
e fud nostre gent tant creue,
and was our folk so-much increased

quant la novele fud seue,
when the news was known
que quant li Turc crestre les virent
that when the Turks to-increase them saw
vers la montaine s'en fuirent,
toward the mountain themselves-thence fled
fors cil qui aconseu furent;
except those who overtaken were
e noz nafrez qui illoc jurent
and our wounded who there lay
soef sor les chevals monterent
gently upon the horses mounted
e puis en l'ost les aporterent.
and then into the-host them brought
Issi rala ceste aventure
Thus went-back this adventure
qui bien deit estre en escripture.
which well ought be in writing

The Holy Cross Found, and the Council

XVIII

Three days before Midsummer the abbot of Saint Elias leads Richard to a piece of the Holy Cross he had hidden from Saladin, and the host kisses it and weeps. The poor ask when they will go to Jerusalem. Richard tells the council that he will not lead a siege he would be blamed for, far from the shore with its supplies cut off, and proposes that the men of the land judge between Jerusalem, Babylon, Beirut, and Damascus. Twenty Templars, Hospitallers, Syrian knights, and French barons judge for Babylon; the French refuse and say they will go only to the siege. Richard offers his fleet and his pay for Egypt, or to go to the siege with them though not as its leader. His men meet in the Hospital's tent and promise rich aid for the siege, which Ambroise calls folly against the judges' advice.

Devant Saint Johan al tierc jor
Before Saint John at-the third day
illoc ou l'ost iert a sujor
there where the-host was at rest
eth vos tel novele aportee
behold you such news brought
dont l'ost fud forment comfortee;
whereby the-host was strongly comforted
car uns seinz abes l'aporta,
for a holy abbot it-brought
qui tot le poeple en comforta.
who all the people thereby comforted
De Seint Helye iert le seinz abes,
Of Saint Elias was the holy abbot
si viveit de pain et de rabes:
so lived on bread and on turnips

barbe ot grant creue od nature,
beard had great grown with nature
bien sembloit seinte creature.
well seemed holy creature
Cil dist al rei c'un liu saveit,
He said to-the king that-a place he-knew
que longement guardé aveit,
which long guarded he-had
ou une croiz esteit reposte,
where a cross was hidden
dont Dampnedeu l'ot feit son oste:
whereof Lord-God him-had made his host
une part ot de la croiz sainte
a part it-had of the cross holy
dont il i ot partie mainte,
whereof it there had part many
que tut sols li bons cristiens,
that all alone the good Christian
qui n'esteit pas trop anciens,
who not-was at-all too old
aveit illoc muciee e mise
had there hidden and put
jusque la terre fust comquise,
until the land should-be conquered
si l'aveit mult chiers comparee,
so it-had much dear paid-for
car Salahadins demandee
for Saladin asked
l'aveit plusors foiz a l'abé;
it-had several times to the-abbot

mais li abes l'en ot gabé,
but the abbot him-thereof had mocked
et si l'en mist il en destreit,
and so him-thereof put he in distress
e l'en fist lier mult estreit;
and him-thereof made bind very tight
meis onc por mal qu'en li feist
but ever for ill which-one to-him should-do
ne pot tant faire qu'il deist
not could so-much do that-he should-say
u ele iert ne qu'el fust rendue,
where it was nor that-it should-be rendered
ainz li dist qu'il l'aveit perdue
rather to-him said that-he it-had lost
quant Jerusalem fud comquise;
when Jerusalem was conquered
e quant li reis ot l'ovre enquise,
and when the king had the-work inquired
si fist le seint abé monter
so made the holy abbot mount
dont vos m'oez ici conter.
of-whom you me-hear here tell
Lors monta e la baronie,
Then mounted and the baronage
et i ot grant bachelerie;
and there had great young-knighthood
tot sereement s'aroterent,
all closely themselves-ranked
si chevalcherent e errerent
so rode and journeyed

après l'abé tote la veie
after the-abbot all the way
jusqu'al liu dont parlé aveie,
until-to-the place of-which spoken I-had
ou cele croiz esteit muciee,
where that cross was hidden
qui cel jor fud si eshauciee
which that day was so exalted
que tanz genz l'alouent baissier
that so-many folk it-went to-kiss
que l'em nes poeit apaisier.
that one not-them could appease
Tot dreit a l'ost l'en aporterent,
All straight to the-host it-thence brought
dont tote la recomforterent,
whereby all it comforted-again
e meinte lerme i ot pluree
and many-a tear there had wept
illoc ou el fud auree.
there where it was adored
Quant cele croiz fud eshauciee,
When that cross was exalted
dont l'ost fud mult esleiscee,
whereby the-host was much gladdened
e longement l'orent tenue,
and long it-had held
la povre gent de l'ost menue
the poor folk of the-host small

commencierent illoc a dire
began there to say
e diseient: «Deus, biaus dolz sire,
and said God fair sweet lord
que fesons nos? Que ferad l'em?
what do we What will-do one
Iroms nos en Jerusalem?»
Shall-go we into Jerusalem
Donc se plainstrent, ço fu la some,
Then themselves complained this was the sum
tant que li reis e li haut home
so-much that the king and the high men
l'oirent dire, sin parlerent
it-heard say so-thereof spoke
e en plusors sens deviserent,
and in several directions discussed
saveir quel conseil il avreient
to-know what counsel they would-have
e s'en Jerusalem ireient;
and if-into Jerusalem they-would-go
e li Franceis le rei requistrent
and the French the king asked
plusors foiees e li distrent,
several times and to-him said
tels i aveit, que il loassent
such there had that they should-advise
que Jerusalem asejassent.
that Jerusalem they-should-besiege
E li reis dist: «Ço ne puet estre,
And the king said This not can be

ne vos ne me verrez ja mestre
nor you not me will-see ever master
de gent mener dont j'aie blame,
of folk to-lead whereof I-may-have blame
si ne me chalt qui m'en mesame;
so not me matters who me-thereof dislikes
e si sachiez de voir sanz faille
and so know of true without fail
que en quel liu que nostre ost aille,
that in whatever place that our host may-go
Salahadins set nostre affaire
Saladin knows our business
e le efforz que nos poums faire;
and the effort which we can make
si sumes loinz de la marine:
so are-we far from the shore
e s'il e sa gent sarazine
and if-he and his folk Saracen
es plains de Rames s'avalouent,
into-the plains of Ramla themselves-descended
e la vitaille nous veouent
and the victuals to-us forbade
que ne la poissums aveir,
that not it we-could have
ço ne sereit mie saveir
this not would-be at-all wisdom
a cels qui al siege sereient,
to those who at-the siege would-be
ainz quid bien qu'il le comperreient;
rather I-think well that-they it would-pay-for

e l'açainte de la citié,
and the-enclosure of the city
ço me dit l'em de verité,
this me says one of truth
est si grant en chescon endreit
is so great in each place
que tant de gent i covendreit
that so-much of folk there would-behoove
∗∗∗
(lacuna)
que l'ost ne porioms rescore
that the-host not we-could rescue
s'ele esteit des Turs assaillie,
if-it were by-the Turks assailed
einz sereit morte e malbaillie;
rather would-be dead and ill-handled
e si jo l'ost issi menoue
and if I the-host thus led
e Jerusalem asejoue
and Jerusalem besieged
e aventure i avenist
and mischance there should-happen
per quei il lor mesavenist,
by which it to-them should-go-ill
ge en sereie tuz jorz blasmez
I thereof would-be all days blamed
e honiz e meins aamez;
and shamed and less loved

e si sai de veirs sanz dotance
and so I-know of true without doubt
qu'il ad tel gent ci e en France
that-it has such folk here and in France
qui ont volu e qui voldreient
who have wished and who would-wish
e qui mult le desirereient
and who much it would-desire
que jo eusse tele ovre faite
that I had such work done
que fust par tut en mal retraite;
which should-be through all in ill recounted
e nos, genz de estranges contrees,
and we folk of foreign countries
nos ne savomes lor estrees,
we not know their ways
ne les chemins ne les lanroiz,
nor the roads nor the narrows
ne les mals pas ne les destroiz ***
nor the bad passes nor the straits (lacuna)
par quoi nos peussoms conquere.
by which we could conquer
Mais par cels qui sunt de la terre,
But by those who are of the land
que lur fiez volent recovrer,
who their fiefs wish to-recover
par icels devons nos ovrer
by those ought we work

et par le conseil des Templiers
and by the counsel of-the Templars
o l'assens des Ospitaliers,
with the-assent of-the Hospitallers
e par cels qui autre feiz furent
and by those who other time were
en la terre, e qui la conurent
in the land and who it knew
et qui la conussent uncore.
and who it know still
Sor cels loereie jo encore
Upon those would-advise I still
que l'en meist l'esguard a faire,
that one should-put the-judgment to make
içe si fereit bien affaire,
this so would-make well business
u del siege faire e emprendre
or of-the siege making and undertaking
ou d'aler Babiloine prendre
or of-going Babylon to-take
u a Barut ou a Damas;
or to Beirut or to Damascus
si ne nos descorderons pas ***
so not ourselves shall-disagree at-all (lacuna)
c'unques genz tant nes descorderent.»
that-ever folk so-much not-themselves disagreed
Tant que illoques esguarderent:
Until that there they-judged

des Templiers pristrent cinc ou quatre
of-the Templars they-took five or four
por les estrifs entr'els abatre,
for the strifes between-them to-strike-down
et autant des Hospitaliers
and as-many of-the Hospitallers
e des Suliens chevaliers,
and of-the Syrian knights
et autant des barons de France,
and as-many of-the barons of France
tant que vint furent sanz dotance
so-much that twenty were without doubt
qui en lor seremenz se metreient
who in their oaths themselves would-put
et en ço qu'il esguardereient
and in this that-they would-judge
e sur lur liautez se mistrent;
and upon their loyalties themselves put
e cil esguarderent e distrent
and those judged and said
que li greindre preuz de la terre
that the greatest profit of the land
iert de Babiloine comquerre;
was of Babylon conquering
et quant li Franceis l'entendirent,
and when the French it-heard
si fud veirs qu'il s'en deffaillirent,
so was true that-they themselves-thereof failed

e distrent que al siege ireient
and said that to-the siege they-would-go
e que aillurs n'en tornereient.
and that elsewhere not-thence would-turn
Quant li rois oi la descorde,
When the king heard the discord
ou Deus ne voleit metre acorde,
where God not wished to-put accord
e que c'ert par les genz de France,
and that it-was by the folk of France
lors dist illoques sanz dotance
then said there without doubt
que se li Franceis le creussent
that if the French him should-believe
qu'en Babiloine s'esmeussent:
that-into Babylon themselves-should-move
«Veez m'estorie a Acre arestee,
See my-fleet at Acre halted
que ja lur aveie aprestee
which already for-them I-had prepared
a porter enz lor guarnestures,
to carry in their provisions
lor herneis e lor trusseures
their gear and their baggage
e lor bescuit e lor farine;
and their biscuit and their flour
e l'ost alast par la marine,
and the-host should-go by the shore

e je menasse a mes deniers
and I would-lead at my pennies
el non Deu set cent chevaliers,
in-the name (of-)God seven hundred knights
e deus mile serjanz oveques
and two thousand sergeants with-them
i menasse des ci illoques;
there would-lead from here there
e si sachent encor de veir
and so let-them-know still of true
que nuls proz hom a mon aveir
that any worthy man to my wealth
ne faillist ja por nul affaire;
not should-fail ever for any business
e quant il ço ne volent faire,
and when they this not wish to-do
ge sui tut prest d'aler al siege,
I am all ready of-going to-the siege
forsque, par seint Lambert de Lege,
except-that by saint Lambert of Liege
sachent que jo nes merrai mie,
let-them-know that I not-them shall-lead at-all
mais bien iere en lor compainie.»
but well shall-be in their company
Lors comanda sanz plus d'atente
Then commanded without more of-waiting
que les sues genz en la tente
that the his folk in the tent

de l'Ospital tuit s'asemblassent,
of the-Hospital all should-assemble
e que illoques esguardassent
and that there should-judge
quel aide al siege i tendreient
what aid at-the siege there they-would-hold
quant vers Jerusalem vendreient.
when toward Jerusalem they-would-come
E il i vindrent e s'asistrent,
And they there came and themselves-seated
e mult richement i premistrent,
and very richly there promised
e tels i offri mult granz offres
and such there offered very great offers
qui mult aveit poi en ses cofres;
who much had little in his coffers
mais trop grant folur enpreissent
but too great folly they-would-have-undertaken
si en icel point l'aseissent
if in that point it-they-had-besieged
après ço que cil qui jurerent
after this that those who swore
par bone fei lor desloerent.
by good faith to-them advised-against

The Caravan Taken

XIX

Bernard and his fellow spies, dressed as Saracens, bring word of a great caravan coming from Babylon. Richard rides out with the duke of Burgundy, who claims a third of the spoil, and a Bedouin and two Turcopoles scout it by night. At dawn the Turks form on a hillside; Richard breaks their first battle and pursues them across the wasteland, and the caravan is taken with its camels, mules, and riches, its cloths, spices, and arms. Richard divides the spoil, but the council decides again not to besiege Jerusalem, for want of water in high summer, and the host despairs.

Endementers qu'il prometeient
Meanwhile that-they promised
ço qu'al siege metre deveient,
this which-at-the siege put they-ought
estes vos que Bernard l'espie,
behold you that Bernard the-spy
uns hom qui iert nez de Sulie,
a man who was born of Syria
sei tierz d'autretels barbarins,
himself third of-such barbarians
od vestemenz de Sarazins,
with garments of Saracens
de Babiloine reveneient,
from Babylon came-back
ne d'autre mestier ne serveient
nor of-other office not served
fors d'espier l'ost sarazine;
except of-spying the-host Saracen
si vos os bien dire en plevine
so you I-dare well say in pledge

c'onques ne vi gent mielz senblasent
that-ever not saw-I folk better should-resemble
Sarazins, ne qui mielz parlassent
Saracens nor who better should-speak
Sarazinois, oiant la gent.
Saracen hearing the folk
Chescons d'els trois cent mars d'argent
Each of-them three hundred marks of-silver
aveit del rei Richart eu
had from-the king Richard had
de ço qu'il esteient meu.
for this that-they were moved
Cil distrent al rei belement
Those said to-the king fairly
que il montast ignelement
that he should-mount swiftly
e ses genz, e il le mereient
and his folk and they him would-lead
jusqu'as carvanes ki veneient
until-to-the caravans which came
devers Babiloine chargiees,
from-toward Babylon loaded
que il aveient espiees;
which they had spied
e si tost com li reis le oï,
and so soon as the king it heard
enz en son cuer s'en esjoi,
in in his heart himself-thereof rejoiced

e manda al duc de Burgoine
and sent to-the duke of Burgundy
qu'il venist a cele besoine
that-he should-come to that business
e menast od lui les Franceis;
and should-lead with him the French
e il si fist, fors que anceis
and he so did except that before
distrent qu'il voleient aveir
they-said that-they wished to-have
le tierç del guaing de l'aveir,
the third of-the gain of the-wealth
e li rois le lor graanta.
and the king it to-them granted
Lors monterent e il monta,
Then they-mounted and he mounted
e furent dunc illoc esmé
and were then there reckoned
cinc cent chevalers bien armé,
five hundred knights well armed
e mil serjanz preuz e legiers
and thousand sergeants worthy and nimble
mena li reis od ses deniers,
led the king with his pennies
e il devant sis cors demaine.
and he before his body own
Ço fud un seir de diemaine;
This was an evening of Sunday

tute nuit a la lune errerent,
all night by the moon they-journeyed
onc si poi non ne s'aresterent,
ever except little not not themselves-halted
ainz furent a la Galatie;
rather were at the Galatie
la descendi la gent hardie,
there dismounted the folk bold
tote garnie de bataille,
all equipped for battle
et enveierent por vitaille
and sent for victuals
a Escalone, e la se tindrent
to Ascalon and there themselves held
tant que li escuier revindrent.
until that the squires came-back
Si tost com nostre gent s'esmurent,
So soon as our folk themselves-moved
li reis e cil qui od lui furent,
the king and those who with him were
eth vos c'une espie s'en torne
behold you that-a spy himself-thence turns
a Jerusalem e retorne
to Jerusalem and returns
dreit a Salahadin conter
straight to Saladin to-tell
qu'il ot veu le rei monter
that-he had seen the king mount
por aler ses carvanes prendre.
for to-go his caravans to-take

Salahadins sanz plus atendre
Saladin without more awaiting
prist cinc cent Turs toz esleuz,
took five hundred Turks all chosen
des meillors qu'il aveit euz;
of-the best that-he had had
sis enveia dreit as carvanes,
so-them sent straight to-the caravans
et aveient e arcs et canes;
and they-had and bows and canes
e quant il od cels s'asemblerent
and when they with those themselves-joined
qui les carvanes amenerent,
who the caravans brought
deus mile a cheval les esmouent
two thousand on horse them reckoned
estre cels a pié qui alouent.
besides those on foot who went
Estes vos au rei une espie
Behold you to-the king a spy
poignant dreit a la Galatie,
spurring straight to the Galatie
sil hasta mult que tost venist
so-him hastened much that soon he-should-come
e que l'ost coie se tenist
and that the-host quiet itself should-hold
e qu'a la reonde cisterne,
and that-at the round cistern
entor e environ le cerne,
around and about the circle

iert une carvane venue,
was a caravan come
e qui cele avreit retenue
and who that would-have retained
mult i poreit grant chose aquere.
much there could great thing acquire
L'espie iert nee de la terre,
The-spy was born of the land
si ne se pot pas en lui croire
so not himself could at-all in him believe
li reis, einz envoia anoire
the king rather sent forthwith
un Bedoin e deuz serjanz
a Bedouin and two sergeants
Turcoples, preuz e encerchanz,
Turcopoles worthy and searching
por enquerre e por espier,
for to-inquire and for to-spy
e fist les Turcoples lier
and made the Turcopoles bind
a la guise del Bedoin,
in the guise of-the Bedouin
alsi come autre Saraizin;
also as other Saracen
e fud par nuit que il errerent:
and was by night that they journeyed
par mi les anguardes monterent,
through midst the lookouts they-mounted
e monterent e descendirent,
and mounted and descended

tant que en une anguarde virent
until that on a lookout they-saw
guaitier ne sai quanz Sarazins;
watch not I-know how-many Saracens
e l'espie e li Bedoins
and the-spy and the Bedouin
s'ala pas por pas vers els traire,
himself-went step by step toward them to-draw
e fist ses deus compaignons taire,
and made his two companions be-silent
qu'il ne fussent aperceu,
that-they not should-be perceived
dont li Turc furent deceu.
whereby the Turks were deceived
Cil de la as noz demanderent
Those of there to-the ours asked
dont e de quel part venu erent;
whence and from what side come they-were
e li Bedoins s'abandone,
and the Bedouin himself-abandons
si dist que devers Escalone,
so said that from-toward Ascalon
d'une proie qu'il orent prise.
from-a booty which-they had taken
Li uns respondi a sa guise:
The one answered in his guise
«Ençois venez por nos mals quere:
Rather you-come for our harms to-seek
tu iés od le rei d'Engletere.»
thou art with the king of-England

Li Bedoins dist: «Vos mentez.»
The Bedouin said You lie
Lors fud d'errer entalentez,
Then was of-journeying eager
si s'en ala vers les carvanes,
so himself-thence went toward the caravans
e li Turc as arcs e as canes
and the Turks with-the bows and with-the canes
les sivirent e les chacierent,
them followed and them chased
tant que par ennui les laisserent,
until that by trouble them they-left
e quiderent qu'il fust des lur;
and thought that-he were of-the theirs
e li Bedoins prist son tur,
and the Bedouin took his turn
quant la verité ot seue
when the truth he-had known
que la carvane esteit venue,
that the caravan was come
si li fu a grant sen torné.
so to-him was to great sense turned
Eth le vos al rei retorné,
Behold him you to-the king returned
si lui dist qu'il saveit de veir
so to-him said that-he knew of true
qu'il poeit la carvane aveir;
that-he could the caravan have

e li reis el non a seint Jorge
and the king in-the name of saint George
fist doner as chevals lor orge.
made give to-the horses their barley
Lors mangerent e puis monterent,
Then they-ate and then mounted
e trestute la nuit errerent,
and all the night journeyed
tant que a meimes le liu furent
until that at very-same the place they-were
ou la carvane e li Turc jurent.
where the caravan and the Turks lay
Eth le vos illoc aresté.
Behold him you there halted
bel tens feseit cum en esté;
fair weather it-made as in summer
li reis s'arma e tuit s'armerent,
the king himself-armed and all themselves-armed
e lor batailles conreerent.
and their battles arrayed
Franceis firent la riere guarde,
French made the rear guard
e li reis fud en l'avan guarde,
and the king was in the-van guard
qui fist par tote l'ost crier
who made through all the-host cry
que qui ne voldreit oblier
that who not would-wish to-forget
s'onor qu'a gaing ne tendist,
his-honor that-to gain not should-tend

mais tote voies entendist
but all ways should-attend
as Turs descomfire e perchier
to-the Turks to-rout and to-pierce
e a ferir des branz d'acier.
and to strike with-the swords of-steel
Endementers qu'il conreouent
Meanwhile that-they arrayed
lor batailles e ordenouent,
their battles and ordered
eth vos une autre espie al rei
behold you an other spy to-the king
venir poignant a grant desrei,
come spurring with great disorder
ki lui dist que des l'enjornee
who to-him said that since the-daybreak
esteit la carvane atornee,
was the caravan arrayed
e qu'il s'erent aparceu;
and that-they themselves-were perceived
e quant li reis ot ço seu,
and when the king had this known
si enveia avant archiers,
so sent ahead archers
Turcoples e arbalastiers,
Turcopoles and crossbowmen
por herdeier e detenir,
for to-skirmish and to-detain
tant qu'il peust as Turs venir.
until that-he could to-the Turks come

Endementers qu'il herdeioient,
Meanwhile that-they skirmished
e lor batailles aprismouent,
and their battles approached
e tant vindrent que pres d'els furent;
and so-much came that near them they-were
e quant li Turc les aparçurent,
and when the Turks them perceived
il se trestrent a un condos
they themselves drew to a shelter
d'une montaine pur ados,
of-a mountain for backing
de bataille tut conreé;
of battle all arrayed
mais n'erent pas trop desreé;
but not-were at-all too-much disordered
e li reis par de deus parties
and the king by of two parts
ot ses batailles departies;
had his battles divided
e cil trestrent e herdeierent,
and those shot and skirmished
quant les batailles aprismerent,
when the battles approached
ausi espès come rosee;
as thick as dew
e la carvane iert arestee;
and the caravan was halted

e li bons reis a bone estraine
and the good king with good gift
en lor bataille premeraine
in their battle first
ala ferir si durement
went to-strike so hard
que jo vos di seurement
that I to-you say surely
que il e si autre conrei
that he and his other companies
les ferirent od tel desrei
them struck with such disorder
que onques tant n'en encontrerent
that ever so-many not-thereof they-met
com a la terre en reverserent.
as to the earth thereof they-overturned
N'onques puis Turs ne retorna,
Nor-ever after Turk not returned
si en fuiant ne trestorna,
if in fleeing not turned-about
n'onques puis n'i ot recovrier,
nor-ever after not-there had recovery
mais tot autresi com levrier
but all likewise as greyhound
teisent le levre a la campaine,
course the hare in the open-field
tut autresi par la montaine
all likewise through the mountain
fesoient nostre gent la lur,
did our folk the theirs

e les meteit a tel dolur
and them put to such grief
qu'el s'en fuoit tote espartie
that-it itself-thence fled all scattered
e descomfite e departie,
and routed and divided
e la carvane esteit leissiee;
and the caravan was left
e nostre gent tote esleissiee
and our folk all at-full-tilt
chaçoit toz jorz destre e senestre;
chased all days right and left
si dit cil qui puis sot lor estre
so says he who after knew their state
que tant en loinz dura la fuie
that so-much thereof far lasted the flight
des Turs en la large berruie
of-the Turks in the wide wasteland
qu'il chaeient de sei estaint;
that-they fell of thirst extinguished
e cil qui esteient ataint,
and those who were overtaken
li chevaler les abateient
the knights them struck-down
e li serjant les ocieient.
and the sergeants them killed
La veissiez seles turner
There you-might-have-seen saddles turn
e gent laidement atorner;
and folk foully handle

la veissiez fiers cops de guerre
there you-might-have-seen fierce blows of war
ferir al preu rei d'Engletere.
strike to-the worthy king of-England
Si ne quidez pas que j'enprenge
So not think at-all that I-undertake
dire de li ici losenge;
to-say of him here flattery
car tantes genz ses biaus cops virent
for so-many folk his fair blows saw
que sor ço arester me firent.
that upon this stop me they-made
La veissiez le rei chacier
There you-might-have-seen the king chase
les Turs, el poing le brant d'acier,
the Turks in-the fist the sword of-steel
que cels que il aconsiveit
that those whom he overtook
issi com il les parsiweit
so as he them pursued
que ja arme nes defendist
that ever armor not-them should-defend
jusqu'enz es denz nes porfendist,
until-into in-the teeth not-them he-should-cleave
que tut autresi le fuioient
that all likewise him fled
cume berbiz qui le lou voient.
as sheep which the wolf see

Cum issi li premier chaçouent
As thus the first chased
par la montaine e les tesoient,
through the mountain and them harried
e Saraizin jusques a trente
and Saracens until to thirty
trestornerent jusque une sente,
turned-about until a path
par dreit curuz e par envie,
by right wrath and by envy
desur Roger de Toenie:
upon Roger of Tosny
son cheval desoz lui ocistrent,
his horse under him they-killed
si que por poi que il nel pristrent.
so that for little that they not-him took
Eth vos dreit a la gent paiane
Behold you straight to the folk pagan
un compainon, Juquel del Maine,
a companion Juquel of-the Maine
qui erraument fud abatuz,
who forthwith was struck-down
e Rogiers qui s'iert combatuz
and Roger who himself-was fought
ala tut a pié al rescure;
went all on foot to-the rescue
lors veissiez noz genz acure,
then you-might-have-seen our folk run-up
ferant illoc destre e senestre;
striking there right and left

si vint li coens de Leicestre,
so came the count of Leicester
si vint Gileberz Malesmains,
so came Gilbert Malemains
sei tierç od sei e altre al mains,
himself third with himself and others at-the least
e Alixandre Arsis i vint,
and Alexander Arsis there came
e chevaliers ou quinze ou vint;
and knights or fifteen or twenty
si i vint de Loingchamp Estienes,
so there came of Longchamp Stephen
qui par mi liu des genz paienes
who through midst place of-the folk pagan
fist a Rogier si grant bunté
did to Roger so great goodness
qu'il le rot a cheval monté.
that-he him again-had on horse mounted
La veissiez descomfiture
There you-might-have-seen discomfiture
de cele gent oltre nature;
of that folk beyond nature
la veissiez granz cops d'espees,
there you-might-have-seen great blows of-swords
piez e poinz e testes copees,
feet and fists and heads cut-off
porfendues par oilz, par buches,
split through eyes through mouths
tanz cors morz gisanz cume choches
so-many bodies dead lying as stumps

que nostre gent enpeecoient
which our folk hindered
si que en som en trebuchoient.
so that on top thereof they-tumbled
Bien i ferirent Peitevin,
Well there struck Poitevin
Normant, Engleis e Angevin,
Norman English and Angevin
e li bon reis hardiz et pruz
and the good king bold and worthy
le faisoit bien par en sum tuz.
it did well by on top all
La veissiez des Turs tel glaive,
There you-might-have-seen of-the Turks such slaughter
tel ne vit l'em el tens nostre aive,
such not saw one in-the time (of-)our grandfather
e furent mort e si aquis,
and were dead and so overcome
ço fud bien seu e enquis,
this was well known and inquired
c'uns petiz garz de povre pris
that-a little lad of poor worth
en peust tuer set ou dis.
thereof could kill seven or ten
La veissiez les sumettiers
There you-might-have-seen the sumpter-men
as serganz et as chevaliers
to-the sergeants and to-the knights
venir prisons, e se rendeient,
come prisoners and themselves yielded

e les granz chameilz lor tendeient
and the great camels to-them held-out
par les chevestres tuz chargiez,
by the halters all loaded
les muls, les mules, ço sachiez,
the mules the she-mules this know
qui tanz aveirs de granz noblesces
which so-much wealth of great nobleness
portouent e tantes richesces,
carried and so-many riches
or e argent, pailles, samiz,
gold and silver silks samites
de la terre al seignor Damiz,
of the land of-the lord Damiz
e mutabez e baudequins
and mutabez and baudekins
e ciglatons e osterins,
and ciclatouns and purples
casingans e coiltes parpaintes,
padded-coats and quilts stitched
e beles vesteures cointes,
and fair vestments elegant
bels pavillons e beles tentes,
fair pavilions and fair tents
manovrees o granz ententes,
wrought with great attention
bescuit, forment, orges, farines,
biscuit wheat barleys flours
letuaries e medecines,
electuaries and medicines

bacins, bucels e eskekiers,
basins bottles and chessboards
e poz d'argent e chandeillers,
and pots of-silver and candlesticks
peivre e comin e çucre e cire,
pepper and cumin and sugar and wax
tant que nel savreie redire,
so-much that not-it I-would-know-how to-tell
tantes especes de maneres
so-many spices of manners
e tantes autres choses chieres
and so-many other things dear
e tantes beles armeures,
and so-many fair armors
forz e legieres e seures,
strong and light and sure
e tel richece e tel aveir
and such richness and such wealth
qu'il diseient illoc por veir
that-they said there for true
c'onques el tens de nule guerre
that-ever in-the time of any war
n'ot tel guaing feit en la terre.
not-had such gain made in the land
Quant la chenaille fud ocise
When the dog-rabble was killed
e la riche carvane prise,
and the rich caravan taken
mult aveient feit riche eskec;
much they-had made rich plunder

mais mult furent grevé illoc
but much were grieved there
des chameilz cursiers assembler,
of-the camels runaway assembling
que tote l'ost firent trobler;
which all the-host made trouble
car si durement s'en fuioient,
for so hard themselves-thence fled
quant cil a cheval les sivoient,
when those on horse them followed
ke Deus ne fist rien si ignele,
that God not made thing so swift
cerf ne bise, daim ne gacele,
stag nor hind fallow-deer nor gazelle
que aconsivre les peust,
that overtake them could
s'un poi esluiné les eust;
if-a little distanced them it-had
si distrent cil quis aunerent,
so said those who-them gathered
qui sanz les serjanz les esmerent,
who without the sergeants them reckoned
que quatre mile e set cent ierent
that four thousand and seven hundred were
les chameilz qu'il i guainerent;
the camels which-they there gained
e tanz i ot mules e mus
and so-many there had she-mules and mules
e tanz asnes portant seurs
and so-many asses carrying sure

qu'il nes porent onques nombrer:
that-they not-them could ever number
ne feseient fors encombrier;
not did except hindrance
e dient bien qu'en cele chace
and they-say well that-in that chase
que haut que bas que en la place
what high what low that in the place
ot bien mort mil Turs a cheval
there-had well dead thousand Turks on horse
e set cenz qu'el mont que el val,
and seven hundred what-on-the mount what on-the valley
estre cels a pié qu'il tuerent,
besides those on foot whom-they killed
qui onques ne se remuerent.
who ever not themselves stirred
Lors errerent par tels jornees
Then they-journeyed by such days'-journeys
com il aveient atornees,
as they had arranged
tant qu'il vindrent devant Betafe:
until that-they came before Beit-Afa
c'est a quatre liuues de Jaffe;
it-is at four leagues from Jaffa
lor guaing illoc departirent,
their gain there they-divided
e quant d'iloques s'en partirent,
and when from-there themselves-thence departed

si firent en lor retornee
so made in their return
a Rames lor autre jornee;
at Ramla their other day's-march
e l'ost repaira d'Acre illoques,
and the-host returned from-Acre there
li coens Henris, ses genz oveques,
the count Henry his folk with-him
e vindrent tuit en l'ost ariere.
and came all into the-host back
La veissiez joie pleniere
There you-might-have-seen joy full
de la grant merveille qu'il virent
of the great marvel that-they saw
des bestes qui l'ost raemplirent.
of-the beasts which the-host filled
Li reis departi les chameilz,
The king divided the camels
tant bels ne furent veu d'oilz,
so fair not were seen of-eyes
as chevaliers qui l'ost garderent,
to-the knights who the-host guarded
alsi com a cels qui errerent;
also as to those who journeyed
e muls e mules ensement
and mules and she-mules likewise
lur departi il richement;
to-them divided he richly

e toz les anes as serjanz
and all the asses to-the sergeants
fist il doner, petiz e granz.
made he give small and great
Eth vos l'ost de bestes si pleine
Behold you the-host of beasts so full
que l'en les teneit a grant paine.
that one them held with great pain
Mais les joefnes chameilz tuouent
But the young camels they-killed
e les chars volentiers manjouent,
and the flesh willingly ate
car ele iert blanche et savoree
for it was white and savory
quant ele iert rostie e lardee.
when it was roasted and larded
Quant les bestes furent donees
When the beasts were given
par mi l'ost e abandonees,
through midst the-host and abandoned
tant que li plusor s'en plaignouent
so-much that the most themselves-thence complained
por l'orge qu'il encherissouent,
for the-barley which-they made-dear
lors recomencerent a dire
then began-again to say
les genz qui aveient grant ire
the folk who had great wrath
que Jerusalem n'aseoient,
that Jerusalem not-they-besieged

car grant desirier en avoient
for great desire thereof they-had
e n'erent pas asseuré;
and not-were at-all assured
icil qui aveient juré
those who had sworn
e esguardé que pas n'ireient,
and judged that at-all not-they-would-go
por lor conseil qu'il rediseient
for their counsel which-they said-again
que se la citié asejassent
that if the city they-should-besiege
q'entur si poi d'ewe trovassent
that-around so little of-water they-would-find
que cheval ne bestes beussent
that horse nor beasts should-drink
ne les genz, que li Turc peussent,
nor the folk that the Turks could
senz meschief e sanz grant ahan;
without mischief and without great toil
car c'ert entur la seint Johan,
for it-was around the saint John
que la chalur tote rien seche
that the heat every thing dries
en la terre, tele est sa teche;
in the land such is its quality
e li Saraizin abatues
and the Saracens struck-down
aveient totes e fendues
had all and split

les cisternes, por verité,
the cisterns for truth
de tut environ la citié;
from all around the city
si que devant bones deus lues,
so that before good two leagues
u nos n'avioms pais ne triuues,
where we not-had peace nor truces
ne fust sanz grieve eve trovee,
not would-be without grievance water found
ço solt l'em de verté provee,
this knew one of truth proved
fors une mult petite ewette,
except a very small little-water
qui curt desuz mont Olivete
which runs beneath mount Olivet
en Josaphas, ço est Siloé;
in Jehoshaphat this is Siloam
si ne fud pas par cels loé
so not was at-all by those advised
q'entur la citié se meissent,
that-around the city themselves should-put
ne k'en esté siege i feissent.
nor that-in summer siege there they-should-make
Quant la parole fud seue,
When the word was known
descoverte e aconseue,
uncovered and found-out

qu'en Jerusalem pas n'ireient
that-into Jerusalem at-all not-they-would-go
e que il se retornereient,
and that they themselves would-return
la veissiez gent tant dolente
there you-might-have-seen folk so sorrowful
qu'il maudiseient cele atente
that-they cursed that waiting
ke il aveient atendue
which they had awaited
e que tente i eurent tendue,
and that tent there they-had pitched
quant Jerusalem n'iert assise
when Jerusalem not-was besieged
ne ne poeit estre conquise;
nor not could be conquered
car puis jor ne rovassent vivre
for after day not would-they-ask to-live
que Jerusalem fust delivre.
that Jerusalem should-be delivered

The Second Turn Back

XX

The French camp apart from the rest of the host, and the duke of Burgundy has a scurrilous song made about Richard, who answers it with one of his own; Ambroise contrasts them with the crusaders of Antioch. Ten or twelve days after the caravan the host turns back, five years to the day after the land was lost, and Saladin gathers twenty thousand Turks at Jerusalem. Richard asks through Saphadin for the truce once offered him, but Saladin will grant it only if Ascalon is razed; Richard has the Daron thrown down and Ascalon guarded, and the host goes back by Jaffa to Acre, while Saladin summons his emirs and comes down into the plains of Ramla.

Seignor, or ne vos merveilliez
Lords now not you marvel
si Deus ot en vain travilliez
if God had in vain wearied
noz pelerins si com deimes;
our pilgrims so as we-said
car vertez fud que nos veimes
for truth was that we saw
par meintes feiz quant herbergerent,
by many times when they-lodged
al seir quant il d'errer las ierent,
at-the evening when they of-journeying weary were
que li Franceis se departouent
that the French themselves separated
des autres genz e se tendouent
from-the other folk and themselves pitched
tot par els a une partie,
all by themselves at one side

si que l'ost iert si departie
so that the-host was so divided
que li uns por veir sanz mentir
that the one for true without lying
ne voleit l'autre consentir;
not wished the-other to-consent
einz dist li uns: «Tu es itels,»
rather said the one Thou art such
e l'autre a lui: «Tu es iquels;»
and the-other to him Thou art such-like
et Hugues li dux de Burgoine,
and Hugh the duke of Burgundy
ki mult enpoira la besoine,
who much worsened the business
par surfeit e par grant desrei
by excess and by great disorder
fist fere une chançon del rei,
made make a song of-the king
si que la chançon fud vilaine
so that the song was villainous
e de grant vilainie plaine,
and of great villainy full
e la chançon par l'ost hanta.
and the song through the-host haunted
Que pot li reis s'il rechanta
What could the king if-he sang-back
de cels qui le contraliouent
of those who him opposed
par fine envie e ramponouent?
by pure envy and mocked

E de gent si desmesuree
And of folk so immoderate
n'iert ja bone chançon chantee
not-will-be ever good song sung
n'ovraine feite que Deu veie,
nor-work done which God may-see
si com il fist a l'autre veie,
so as it did at the-other way
quant Antioche fud assise
when Antioch was besieged
e nostre gent par force enz mise,
and our folk by force in put
dont l'en reconte encor l'estorie,
whereof one recounts still the-history
de cels qui Deus dona victorie,
of those to-whom God gave victory
de Buiamont et de Tancré,
of Bohemond and of Tancred
c'erent pelerin esmeré,
these-were pilgrims refined
e de Godefrei de Buillun,
and of Godfrey of Bouillon
e de hauz princes de grant non,
and of high princes of great name
e des autres qui lors i furent,
and of-the others who then there were
qui el Deu servise s'esmurent,
who in-the (of-)God service themselves-moved

tant qu'il lor rendi lor servise
until that-he to-them rendered their service
a lur gré et a lur devise
at their will and at their desire
e lor ovraines suzhauça
and their works raised-up
par tantes feiz et eshauça,
by so-many times and exalted
e eus e totes lor lignees;
and them and all their lineages
si en sunt encore eshaucees.
so thereby are still exalted
Dis jorz ou duze, que ne mente,
Ten days or twelve that not I-may-lie
au veir dire, a la meie entente,
to-the true to-say at the my understanding
puis que la carvane fud prise,
after that the caravan was taken
sujorna l'ost en itel guise
stayed the-host in such guise
cum vos m'avez oi cunter;
as you me-have heard tell
e quant a rien ne pot monter
and when to anything not could amount
por nul travail qu'il i meissent
for any toil which-they there should-put
que le sepulcre requeissent
that the sepulcher they-should-seek
dont a quatre liuues esteient,
whereof at four leagues they-were

e dont grant doel es cuers aveient.
and whereof great grief in-the hearts they-had
Si s'en retornerent ariere
So themselves-thence returned back
od tel desheit e od tel chiere
with such dejection and with such face
que suz ciel de gent si eslite
that under heaven of folk so chosen
n'ot plus mate ne desconfite.
not-had more checkmated nor discomfited
Lur ariere guarde establirent;
Their rear guard they-established
e si tost com il se partirent,
and so soon as they themselves departed
e li Sarazin acururent
and the Saracens ran-up
de la montaine e les parsurent,
from the mountain and them pursued
tant que un serjant nos ocistrent;
so-much that a sergeant to-us they-killed
mais cil qui es bons chevals sistrent
but those who on-the good horses sat
les reuserent e chacierent.
them repulsed and chased
Puis errerent e chevalchierent
Then journeyed and rode
tresque entre Saint Jorge e Rames;
right-up between Saint George and Ramla
e icel jor que nos errames
and that day that we journeyed

ot cinc anz senz plus que la terre
had five years without more that the land
rot esté perdue par guerre.
again-had been lost by war
Li Franceis furent a senestre,
The French were at left
e li reis e sa gent a destre;
and the king and his folk at right
e l'endemain, quant il errerent,
and the-next-day when they journeyed
tot autresi se deviserent.
all likewise themselves divided
Devant Chasel Meien revindrent,
Before Casal Maen they-came-back
e se tendirent e se tindrent,
and themselves pitched and themselves held
et tels i ot s'en departirent
and such there had themselves-thence departed
et a Jaffe s'en revertirent
and to Jaffa themselves-thence returned
por l'enui e por la poverte
for the-trouble and for the poverty
qu'il aveient en l'ost sofferte.
which-they had in the-host suffered
Quant Salahadin sot de veir
When Saladin knew of true
que noz genz nul conseil aveir
that our folk any counsel to-have
ne porent fors d'aler ariere,
not could except of-going back

lors ot joie e fist bele chiere,
then had joy and made fair face
e fist chau pas ses briefs escrire,
and made hot foot his letters write
e prist meint messagier delivre;
and took many-a messenger free
si manda as Turs qui l'amouent
so sent to-the Turks who him-loved
que li cristien s'en alouent,
that the Christians themselves-thence went
e que tut erent a descorde
and that all were at discord
e departi sanz point d'acorde;
and divided without point of-accord
e qui voldreit de son aveir
and who would-wish of his wealth
venist, se il en voleit aveir,
should-come if he thereof wished to-have
en Jerusalem a soudees.
into Jerusalem at wages
Eth vos la tant genz assemblees,
Behold you there so-many folk assembled
que dedenz que dehors la vile,
what within what outside the town
ke esmé furent bien a vint mile,
that reckoned were well at twenty thousand
Turs a cheval e bien armé,
Turks on horse and well armed
estre cels de pié ki esmé
besides those of foot who reckoned

ne peussent de legier estre,
not could of ease be
qui tuit saveient bien nostre estre,
who all knew well our state
e ki mult bien le nos mustrerent
and who very well it to-us showed
* * *
(lacuna)
si tost com noz genz retornerent
so soon as our folk returned
illoc ou noz genz surjornerent.
there where our folk stayed
De jur en jur s'en revenouent
From day to day themselves-thence came-back
por le desheit e s'en partouent,
for the dejection and themselves-thence departed
e a Jaffe s'en retornouent,
and to Jaffa themselves-thence returned
que trop povre vie menouent;
for too-much poor life they-led
e quant li reis les vit retraire
and when the king them saw withdraw
e qu'il ne poeit a chief traire
and that-he not could to end draw
de mener l'ost a droite voie,
of leading the-host to right way
e sur ço plus que vos diroie?
and upon this more what to-you would-I-say

Fors qu'il manda a Saffadin
Except that-he sent to Saphadin
qu'il parlast a Salahadin,
that-he should-speak to Saladin
e li feist par tens saveir
and to-him should-make by time know
se il poreit la triuue aveir
if he could the truce have
qu'il lui offri as plains de Rames,
which-he to-him offered at-the plains of Ramla
issi com nos le vos contames,
so as we it to-you told
tant qu'il revenist de sa terre;
until that-he should-come-back from his land
il l'ala al soldan requere:
he it-went to-the sultan to-ask
mais il sot nostre retornee
but he knew our return
de la premeraine jornee;
from the first day's-march
si ne li volt solement onques
so not to-him wished only ever
les triuues otrier idonques,
the truces to-grant then
s'Escalone n'iert abatue.
if-Ascalon not-were struck-down
Eth vos la novele esbatue
Behold you the news spread
de si qu'au rei a l'ost ariere,
from thus till-to-the king to the-host back

qui onc n'en fist semblant ne chiere,
who ever not-thereof made seeming nor face
n'onques nes en velt escoltier;
nor-ever not-them thereof wishes to-listen
einz comanda chau pas monter
rather commanded hot foot to-mount
que Templiers, que Hospitaliers.
what Templars what Hospitallers
Ke autres treis cent chevaliers;
What other three hundred knights
si comanda qu'il abatissent
so commanded that-they should-strike-down
le Daron, e que il feissent
the Daron and that they should-make
prendre d'Escalone grant garde
take of-Ascalon great guard
que il n'en perdist par mesgarde.
that he not-thereof should-lose by carelessness
Cil alerent e l'abatirent,
Those went and it-struck-down
e puis a l'ost s'en revertirent,
and then to the-host themselves-thence returned
e revint l'ost a Jaffe ariere,
and came-back the-host to Jaffa back
pesante e od pensive chiere,
heavy and with pensive face
e de Jaffe a Acre erraument;
and from Jaffa to Acre forthwith
mais mult remist a Jaffe gent
but much remained at Jaffa folk

seine e malade, après la rote,
sound and sick after the troop
qui puis i furent a grant dote.
who after there were in great doubt
Eth vos a Acre revenue
Behold you to Acre come-back
l'ost par la ou ele ert venue,
the-host through there where it was come
mate e comfuse, un diemaine; 10785
checkmated and confounded a Sunday
mais issi veit qui pechié maine.
but thus goes who sin leads
Si tost come Salahadins
So soon as Saladin
e li sons freres Saffadins
and the his brother Saphadin
seurent que nos nos departimes
knew that we ourselves departed
de Jaffe, si com vos deimes, 10790
from Jaffa so as you we-said
e que nos nos en esloignames
and that we ourselves thence distanced
od tel deshet com nos contames,
with such dejection as we told
eth vos l'ost semonse e banie
behold you the-host summoned and proclaimed
des fieres genz de paenie;
of-the fierce folk of heathendom

e ot bien donques li soldans
and had well then the sultan
a cel termine e a cel tans
at that term and at that time
Turs a cheval plus de vint mile,
Turks on horse more than twenty thousand
e si ot l'amirail de Bile,
and so had the-emir of Bile
si i ot le filz le Hausasis,
so there had the son (of-)the Assassin
e admiralz bien cent e sis,
and emirs well hundred and six
e gent de pié de la montaine,
and folk of foot of the mountain
tant qu'el covroit tote la plaine.
so-much that-it covered all the plain
Eth vos l'ost tote descendue
Behold you the-host all descended
de Jerusalem et tendue
from Jerusalem and pitched
es pleins de Rames ça aval;
in-the plains of Ramla here down
la veissiez meint bel cheval.
there you-might-have-seen many-a fair horse

Jaffa Lost and Retaken

XXI

The day the host reaches Acre, Saladin besieges Jaffa, mines and batters its walls, and storms the town on the Friday, killing the sick and penning the garrison in the Toron. The new patriarch buys a truce until the next day and gives hostages. Richard, about to sail for Beirut, hears the news; the French refuse to come, so Templars and Hospitallers go by land and he by sea. Contrary winds hold him under Haifa; he reaches Jaffa by night, and next morning the Turks are beheading the garrison as it pays its ransom. A priest swims out to tell him some still live, and Richard wades ashore, clears the beach, retakes the town, and drives Saladin two leagues back.

Le diemeinche, el jur meimes
The Sunday on-the day very-same
que a Acre nus revenimes,
that to Acre we came-back
fud a Jaffe l'ost atravee
was at Jaffa the-host beset
de la paene gent desvee, 10810
of the pagan folk mad
e le lunsdi si assaillirent
and the Monday so assailed
* * *
(lacuna)
dehors es jardins s'encontrerent,
outside in-the gardens themselves-met
e tute jor les contresterent,
and all day them withstood

si qu'onques cel jor n'aprismerent
so that-ever that day not-they-approached
del chastel, tant les herdeierent,
of-the castle so-much them they-skirmished
ne l'endemain qui fud marsdi,
nor the-next-day which was Tuesday
ne le tierc jor; mais le joesdi
nor the third day but the Thursday
fud la vile entur asiegiee,
was the town around besieged
e la gent dedenz trop gregiee;
and the folk within too-much aggrieved
e fist drescier quatre perieres
and made raise four petraries
Salahadins forz e legieres
Saladin strong and light
e dous mangonels a jetter;
and two mangonels to throw
e donc oissiez regreter
and then you-might-have-heard lament
as cristiens dedenz la vile,
to-the Christians within the town
qui esteient plus de cinc mile,
who were more than five thousand
que sain que malade gisant,
what sound what sick lying
qui tut alouent regretant
who all went lamenting
e diseient: «Ha! reis d'Engletere,
and said Ah king of-England

que es tu alez a Acre quere?
what art thou gone to Acre to-seek
Cristienté, com iés faillie!»
Christendom how art-thou failed
La veissiez gent assaillie
There you-might-have-seen folk assailed
a tel force e od tel emprise,
with such force and with such enterprise
e tant gent nafree e ocise,
and so-many folk wounded and killed
e si hardiement deffendre
and so boldly to-defend
e si tost monter e descendre
and so quickly to-mount and to-descend
que suz ciel n'ad riens quil veist
that under heaven not-has thing who-it should-see
qui trop grant pitié n'en preist.
who too great pity not-thereof should-take
Les perieres tozjorz jeterent,
The petraries always threw
e li mangonel ne finerent;
and the mangonels not ceased
cil dedenz perieres aveient,
those within petraries had
mais aidier ne s'en saveient.
but to-help not themselves-thereby knew-how
Li Turc jeterent a la porte
The Turks threw at the gate
devers Jerusalem trop forte,
toward Jerusalem too strong

tant que li arc de sus chairent,
so-much that the arch from above fell
dont nostre gent mult s'esperdirent,
whereof our folk much themselves-dismayed
e le mur a destre trencherent:
and the wall at right they-cut
deus perches jus en trebucherent
two perches down thereof tumbled
le jur de vendresdi sanz faille.
the day of Friday without fail
La veissiez dure bataille,
There you-might-have-seen hard battle
quant li Turc en la vile entrerent:
when the Turks into the town entered
achamaillé illoques erent;
hand-to-hand there they-were
mais li Turc, qui toz jorz creissouent
but the Turks who all days increased
des conroiz qui de l'ost issouent,
by-the companies which from the-host went-out
crurent tant que il les perchierent,
grew so-much that they them pierced
e que contre mont les chacierent
and that toward up them they-chased
desqu'el Toron devant la tur.
until-to-the Toron before the tower
La veissiez hisdos atur
There you-might-have-seen hideous array

des malades qui se giseient
of-the sick who themselves lay
par les maisons, qu'il ocieient,
through the houses whom-they killed
dont il i ot maint bon martyr.
whereof it there had many-a good martyr
La veissiez genz departyr
There you-might-have-seen folk to-depart
e fuir s'en vers la marine;
and to-flee themselves-thence toward the shore
e la cruel gent sarazine
and the cruel folk Saracen
les maisons pristrent e pelfrerent,
the houses took and pillaged
e trestoz les blez en porterent
and all the grains thence carried
e trestoz les vins espandirent.
and all the wines spilled
Li un le Thoron assaillirent
The ones the Toron assailed
ou la gent Dampnedeu esteient,
where the folk (of-)Lord-God were
qui durement se defendeient;
who hard themselves defended
e li autre a la mer cururent,
and the others to the sea ran
as nefs, as barges ki la furent,
to-the ships to-the barges which there were

ou noz genz voleient vertir
where our folk wished to-turn
por els salver e guarantir.
for themselves to-save and to-protect
La ot meint mort des dererains.
There had many-a dead of-the last
La vit l'em Auberi de Rains,
There saw one Auberi of Reims
qui le chastel deveit guarder,
who the castle ought guard
si vilainement coarder
so basely to-play-the-coward
qu'il iert entré en une barge
that-he was entered into a barge
por fuir s'en par la mer large,
for to-flee himself-thence by the sea wide
quant li prodome l'escrierent
when the worthy-men him-cried-out
tant que ariere le retornerent,
so-much that back him they-turned
e mistrent a force el Thoron,
and put by force in-the Toron
e tant qu'il dist: «Ici muron
and so-much that-he said Here let-us-die
por Deu, quant autre ne puet estre.»
for God when other not can be
Tut entur els, destre e senestre,
All around them right and left

au pié del Thoron assailleient
at-the foot of-the Toron assailed
tant Turc que il ne se saveient
so-many Turks that they not themselves knew
de la quel partie defendre.
from the which side to-defend
La veissiez pilez descendre
There you-might-have-seen darts descend
e chaoir plus menu que gresle;
and to-fall more thick than hail
pié a pié erent melle pelle.
foot to foot were pell mell
Tote jor dura l'eschermie,
All day lasted the-skirmish
mais noz genz ne durassent mie
but our folk not would-have-lasted at-all
as granz assalz ne a la grant charge,
to-the great assaults nor to the great charge
si Deus n'eust le patriarche
if God not-had the patriarch
novel feit feit illoc remaindre,
newly made made there to-remain
qui por murir ne se velt faindre
who for to-die not himself wishes to-hold-back
de cels sauver qui illoc esteient
from those to-save who there were
qui a la mort se combateient;
who to the death themselves fought
einz manda a Salahadin,
rather sent to Saladin

au large, au vaillant Sarazin,
to-the generous to-the valiant Saracen
e Saffadin qu'il l'en preiast,
and Saphadin that-he him-thereof should-pray
que une triuue lor otreiast
that a truce to-them he-should-grant
seulement desqu'a l'endemain;
only until-to the-next-day
e il perneit la chose en main,
and he took the thing in hand
s'il n'aveient veu einz none
if-they not-had seen before nones
ou genz d'Acre ou genz d'Escalone
either folk of-Acre or folk of-Ascalon
ou del rei Richart d'Engletere
or of-the king Richard of-England
qu'il aveient enveié quere,
whom-they had sent to-seek
k'il metreit son cors en ostage
that-he would-put his body in hostage
e autres genz de grant parage
and other folk of great parentage
a metre en fers ou en liens
to put in irons or in bonds
que chescon d'icels cristiens
that each of-those Christians
qui el Thoron se combateient
who in-the Toron themselves fought
a Salahadin paereient
to Saladin would-pay

dis besanz d'or deu tensement,
ten bezants of-gold of-the protection
e les femes tut ensement
and the women all likewise
chescone doreit cinc besanz,
each-one would-give five bezants
e treis por les petiz enfanz.
and three for the little children
Issi com il le demanda
So as he it asked
et Salahadins comanda
and Saladin commanded
qu'il fust afié e tenu.
that-it should-be pledged and held
Eth vos le messagier venu,
Behold you the messenger come
eth vos la triuue graantee
behold you the truce granted
e la chose issi arestee:
and the thing thus settled
as Turs deus ostages livrerent,
to-the Turks two hostages they-delivered
ki od le patriarche alerent:
who with the patriarch went
ço fud Auberiz e Tiebauz
this was Auberi and Theobald
de Treies, qui iert preuz e bauz,
of Troyes who was worthy and bold
un serjant le conte Henri,
a sergeant (of-)the count Henry

qui le son peire aveit nurri,
who the his father had nourished
e d'autres en i pot avoir
and of-others thereof there could have
dont jo ne poi les nons savoir.
whereof I not could the names know
Vos m'oistes dire e conter,
You me-heard say and tell
et il fait bien a reconter
and it does well to recount
por le grant bien qui en avint,
for the great good which thereof befell
de l'ost qui a Acre revint,
of the-host which to Acre came-back
tote mate e desfestuee,
all checkmated and joyless
e de deheit tote tuee,
and with dejection all killed
e que tuit aler s'en quidouent
and that all to-go themselves-thence thought
e a lor nefs a plein alouent,
and to their ships in full went
e que li reis Richarz meimes,
and that the king Richard himself
si que a nos oilz le veimes,
so as with our eyes it we-saw
aveit ja pris congié al Temple
had already taken leave at-the Temple
e al Hospital el contemple,
and at-the Hospital in-the time

e aveit veu ses gualees,
and had seen his galleys
qu'eles fussent bien atornees:
that-they should-be well arrayed
a l'endemain se deveit metre
on the-next-day himself ought put
por aler s'en, ço dit la letre,
for to-go himself-thence this says the letter
par Barut il e ses maisnees;
by Beirut he and his households
e i aveit ja enveiees
and there had already sent
set gualees qui estormirent
seven galleys which alarmed
cels del chastel, qui s'en fuirent,
those of-the castle who themselves-thence fled
e qui ja lui ne atendissent
and who ever him not would-have-awaited
si plus des gualees veissent.
if more of-the galleys they-had-seen
Si com li reis iert en sa tente,
So as the king was in his tent
le seir al vespre, en tele atente,
the evening at-the vespers in such waiting
eth vos une barge abrivee
behold you a barge hastened
venir a Acre e arivee;
come to Acre and arrived

e cil qui de la barge eissirent
and those who from the barge went-out
vindrent al rei, plus n'atendirent,
came to-the king more not-they-awaited
si lui distrent que Jaffe iert prise,
so to-him said that Jaffa was taken
e la gent al Thoron assise,
and the folk at-the Toron besieged
s'ele n'iert par lui sucorue,
if-it not-were by him succored
que tote iert morte e encorue,
that all will-be dead and come-to-grief
si come jo vos ai conté;
so as I to-you have told
e li preuz reis par sa bonté
and the worthy king by his goodness
leissa tot son porposement
left all his purpose
e dist: «Jo i irai veirement;»
and said I there shall-go truly
e fist derechief l'ost somondre.
and made again the-host summon
Mais onques li Franceis respondre
But ever the French to-answer
ne l'en voldrent, ainz respondirent,
not him-thereof wished rather answered
li envios qui mal le virent,
the envious who ill him saw

que ja lor pié n'i porteroient
that ever their foot not-there would-carry
e qu'en l'ost o lui mes n'iroient:
and that-into the-host with him more not-would-go
no firent, o lui n'od nul ome,
not-it did with him nor-with any man
ainz mururent, ço fud la some.
rather they-died this was the sum
Neporquant cil qui Deu cremoient,
Nevertheless those who God feared
de quel terre que il estoient,
of whatever land that they were
e Templier e Ospitalier
and Templars and Hospitallers
e maint altre bon chevaler
and many-a other good knight
monterent e s'apareillerent,
mounted and themselves-prepared
e errerent e chevalcherent
and journeyed and rode
tot droit a Cesaire par terre;
all straight to Caesarea by land
e le vaillanz reis d'Engletere
and the valiant king of-England
ala en gualees par mer.
went in galleys by sea
Eth les vos richement armer
Behold them you richly arm
si que onques mielz n'en porent estre.
so that ever better not-thereof could be

La fu li quens de Leicestre,
There was the count of Leicester
si i fu Andreus de Chavignié,
so there was Andrew of Chauvigny
si i fu Rogiers de Sacié;
so there was Roger of Sacy
si i vit l'em de Homez Jordan,
so there saw one of Hommet Jordan
qui puis morut en icel an;
who after died in that year
si i fu Raols de Mallion
so there was Ralph of Mauleon
qui a la baniere al lion;
who has the banner with-the lion
si i fu Aucoens del Fai,
so there was Aucon of-the Fay
qui maint Sarazin envai;
who many-a Saracen attacked
si i furent cil de Preals,
so there were those of Preaux
c'erent des compaignons reaus,
these-were of-the companions royal
e maint autre home renomé
and many-a other man renowned
qui ne me furent pas nomé.
who not to-me were at-all named
Cil aloient al Deu servise,
Those went to-the God service
e cil de Genve e cil de Pise,
and those of Genoa and those of Pisa

qui al besoing grant liu i tindrent.
who at-the need great place there held
Oiez coment choses avindrent.
Hear how things befell
Cil qui par terre a Jaffre alouent
Those who by land to Jaffa went
e qui dreit aler i quidouent
and who straight to-go there thought
erent a Cesaire aresté,
were at Caesarea halted
e n'i orent guaires esté
and not-there had much been
quant hom lor dist que Saleadins
when one to-them said that Saladin
lor faisoit guaitier les chemins,
to-them made watch the roads
si qu'il furent illoc assis:
so that-they were there besieged
ço estoit le filz al Hausasis
this was the son of-the Assassin
qui ert entre Arsur e Cesaire.
who was between Arsuf and Caesarea
Devers la mer d'un vent contraire
From-toward the sea by-a wind contrary
noz autres genz sunt destorbees,
our other folk are hindered
e li rois e ces des gualees,
and the king and those of-the galleys

si que de treis jorz ne se murent
so that for three days not themselves moved
de soz Chaiphas ou il jurent,
from beneath Haifa where they lay
e que li reis diseit: «Merci,
and that the king said Mercy
Deu! por quoi me tenez ici?
God for what me hold-you here
Ja vois je en vostre servise!»
Already go I in your service
Mais Dampnedeus par sa franchise
But Lord-God by his nobleness
lor envoia un vent de boire,
to-them sent a wind of north
qui le mena o tot s'estoire
which him led with all his-fleet
al port de Jaffe al vendresdi
to-the port of Jaffa at-the Friday
tart e par nuit; le samedi
late and by night the Saturday
fust la triuue a none faillie,
would-have-been the truce at nones failed
e la gent morte e malbaillie
and the folk dead and ill-handled
e a mort e a doel livree,
and to death and to grief delivered
si Deu ne l'eust delivree
if God not it-had delivered

par le rei issi faitement
by the king so in-manner
com nos vos conterons briefment.
as we to-you shall-tell briefly
Le preuz rois e ses genz menbrees
The worthy king and his folk renowned
orent geu en lor gualees
had lain in their galleys
tote la nuit del vendresdi;
all the night of-the Friday
e al matin del samedi
and at-the morning of-the Saturday
s'arma e ses genz ensement.
himself-armed and his folk likewise
Or si orez deu tensement,
Now so you-will-hear of-the protection
come la vile estoit tensee
how the town was protected
de traison e porparlee,
from treason and plotted
que li Turc orent porpensé
which the Turks had devised
vers cels qui s'estoient tensé
toward those who themselves-were protected
por les besanz que il pramistrent.
for the bezants which they promised
A paier le matin les mistrent,
To pay the morning them they-put
e si paioient ja al main,
and so paid already at-the morning

et li Sarazin tot de plain,
and the Saracens all of open
ensi come cil les paioient,
thus as those them paid
et il les testes lor trenchoient,
and they the heads to-them cut
si quidoient ovrer molt bien;
so thought to-work very well
mais honie soit foi de chien!
but shamed be faith of dog
Ja en avoient set tuez
Already thereof they-had seven killed
e en une fosse estuez,
and into a pit stuffed
quant cil del Thoron s'aperçurent;
when those of-the Toron themselves-perceived
si conterent cil qui la furent
so told those who there were
que illoc veissiez dolz ator,
that there you-might-have-seen doleful array
sus el Thoron devant la tur,
up on-the Toron before the tower
de la peor que cil avoient
from the fear which those had
qui a la mort jugié estoient;
who to the death judged were
la veissiez tanz genz plorer,
there you-might-have-seen so-many folk weep
e metre a genoilz e orer
and to-put on knees and to-pray

faire confès e copes batre,
to-make confession and breasts to-beat
e cil dehors dedenz abatre
and those outside inside to-cast-down
en la presse grant de la gent
into the press great of the folk
por morir dererainement:
for to-die last
quar tote rien, quant mort la chace,
for every thing when death it chases
quiert un poi de tens e d'espace.
seeks a little of time and of-space
Ja atendoient lor martire:
Already awaited their martyrdom
si pouns bien por verté dire
so can-we well for truth say
que illoc ot tels lermes plorees
that there had such tears wept
que a Deu erent savorees;
which to God were savory
car els venoient de destresce
for they came from distress
de mort e de la parfondesce
of death and from the depth
de lur cuer, que a lui tendoient.
of their heart which to him tended
Ensi com il mort atendoient,
Thus as they death awaited

et il n'i avoit nule atente
and it not-there had any waiting
fors de morir a lor entente,
except of dying to their understanding
eht vos li Turc qui aperçurent
behold you the Turks who perceived
les gualees qui el port furent:
the galleys which in-the port were
le rivage tot contre val
the shore all toward below
vinrent a pié e a cheval,
came on foot and on horse
que la marine en fu si plaine
that the shore thereof was so full
que il i porent a grant paine.
that they there could with great pain
Roeles avoient e targes,
Round-shields they-had and targes
e traoient desi qu'as barges
and shot until that-to-the barges
e tresqu'as galees le roi.
and right-up-to-the galleys (of-)the king
La veissiez tant fier desroi
There you-might-have-seen so-much fierce disorder
de cels qui a cheval estoient,
of those who on horse were
qui dedenz la mer s'enbatoient
who within the sea themselves-rushed

e traoient a estriver
and shot to strive
que il ne peussent ariver,
that they not could arrive
e li preus Richarz, ço me semble,
and the worthy Richard this to-me seems
toz ses veissels atrait ensemble
all his vessels drew together
por parler a sa compaignie.
for to-speak to his company
Lors dist a sa chevalerie:
Then said to his knighthood
«Gentilz chevaler, que feroms?
Noble knights what shall-we-do
Irom nos ou ariveroms,
Shall-go we or shall-we-arrive
ou coment le porom nos faire?»
or how it shall-be-able we to-do
Si fu donc itele l'affaire
So was then such the-business
qu'il ot d'itels qui respondirent
that-it had of-such who answered
que a lor avis entendirent
that by their opinion they-understood
que nient n'estoit de l'enprendre
that nothing not-was of the-undertaking
de l'ariver ne del port prendre;
of the-arriving nor of-the port to-take

car tuit quidouent sanz devise
for all thought without question
la gent del chastel fust ocise.
the folk of-the castle were killed
Endementers qu'il enqueroient
Meanwhile that-they inquired
saveir mon s'il ariveroient,
to-know indeed if-they would-arrive
eth vos que li rois d'Engletere
behold you that the king of-England
vit saillir en mer de la terre
saw leap into sea from the land
un provoire messe chantant
a priest mass singing
qui vint al roi tot droit noant,
who came to-the king all straight swimming
quil recoilli en sa gualee.
whom-he received in his galley
Cil li dist: «Gentilz rois, alee
He to-him said Noble king gone
est la gent que vos atent ci,
is the folk which you awaits here
se Deus e vos n'en ait merci.»
if God and you not-thereof may-have mercy
«Coment,» dist li rois, «biaus amis?
How said the king fair friend
Vit en mes nul? ou sunt il mis?»
Lives thereof more any or are they put

«Sire, oil: devant cele tor
Lord yes before that tower
atendent lor mort tot entor.»
they-await their death all around
Si tost com li rois entendi
So soon as the king heard
que si estoit, plus n'atendi;
that so it-was more not-be-waited
lors dist: «Deus nos fist ça venir
then said God us made here come
por soffrir mort e sostenir;
for to-suffer death and to-sustain
e quant morir nos i covient,
and when to-die us there behooves
honiz soit qui ore n'en vient!»
shamed be who now not-thence comes
Lors fist traire avant ses galees;
Then made draw forward his galleys
ses jambes totes desarmees,
his legs all unarmed
sailli des ci qu'a la çainture
leapt from thus till-to the waist
en mer o sa bone aventure,
into sea with his good fortune
e vint a force a tere sesche
and came by force to land dry
secont ou prims, ço fu sa teche.
second or first this was his quality

Giefroi del Bois e de Preials
Geoffrey of-the Bois and of Preaux
Pierre, li preu e li leaus,
Peter the worthy and the loyal
e tuit li autre après saillirent,
and all the others after leapt
as Turs vindrent, sis assaillirent,
to-the Turks came so-them assailed
dont la marine en esteit plaine;
whereof the shore thereof was full
e li preuz reis sis cors demaine
and the worthy king his body in-person
les ocioit o s'arbaleste,
them killed with his-crossbow
e sa preuz gent hardie e preste
and his worthy folk bold and ready
par les rivages les sivoient.
through the shores them followed
Li Turc devant lui s'en fuioient,
The Turks before him themselves-thence fled
qu'il n'i osoient aprismier;
for-they not-there dared to-approach
et il mist main al brant d'acier,
and he put hand to-the sword of-steel
si lor curut en corant sore,
so to-them ran in running upon
e les hasta si a cele hore
and them hastened so at that hour
qu'il n'orent leissir d'els defendre,
that-they not-had leisure of-themselves to-defend

ne ne l'oserent plus atendre
nor not him-dared more to-await
ne sa compagnie esprovee,
nor his company proved
quis fereit come gent desvee.
who-them struck as folk mad
Tant les ferirent e hasterent
So-much them they-struck and hastened
que la marine delivrerent
that the shore they-delivered
des Turs e que toz hors les mistrent,
of-the Turks and that all out them they-put
e donques après ço si pristrent
and then after this so took
toneals e fuz e planches larges
casks and timbers and planks wide
e vielz galees e vielz barges,
and old galleys and old barges
sin estoperent la marine
so-thereof they-stopped-up the shore
entr'els e la gent sarazine;
between-them and the folk Saracen
e i mist li rois chevalers
and there put the king knights
e serjanz e arbalesters
and sergeants and crossbowmen
qui as Sarazins paletoient;
who with-the Saracens skirmished
e il braoient e huoient
and they howled and shouted

e s'en partoient a enviz.
and themselves-thence departed at unwillingness
Puis monta li rois une viz
Then mounted the king a stair
qui veit en l'ostel as Templiers:
which goes into the-lodging of-the Templars
illoc entra il tot premiers
there entered he all first
e se mist a force en la vile,
and himself put by force into the town
e trova bien plus de treis mile
and found well more than three thousand
Sarazins qui tot eissilloient
Saracens who all ravaged
le chastel e tot en portoient;
the castle and all thence carried
e li plus hardiz rois del mont,
and the most bold king of-the world
Richarz, des qu'il fu sus a mont,
Richard since that-he was up to mount
fist ses banieres desploier,
made his banners unfurl
e les fist a mont envoier
and them made to mount send
as cristiens tant qu'il les virent;
to-the Christians until that-they them saw
e si tost com il les choisirent,
and so soon as they them perceived
«Saint sepulcre!» tuit escrierent,
Holy sepulcher all cried-out

lor armes pristrent, si s'armerent,
their arms took so themselves-armed
e si ne demorerent mie.
and so not delayed at-all
Eht vos l'ost paiene estormie
Behold you the-host pagan alarmed
quant il virent noz genz descendre:
when they saw our folk descend
la veissez tanz Turs estendre,
there you-might-have-seen so-many Turks stretch
que li rois a tere estendoit!
whom the king to earth stretched
Nus a son cop ne l'atendoit
Anyone at his blow not him-awaited
que sa vie n'en fust alee.
that his life not-thereof were gone
Eth vos nostre gent avalee
Behold you our folk descended
tot contre val par mi les rues.
all toward below through midst the streets
Le veissiez genz confundues
There you-might-have-seen folk confounded
et ocises e detrenchiees;
and killed and cut-to-pieces
la furent les plaies vengees
there were the wounds avenged
des malades que il troverent
of-the sick whom they found
dedenz la vile, qu'il tuerent,
within the town whom-they killed

qui ne se pooient movoir.
who not themselves could move
La veissiez genz aplovoir
There you-might-have-seen folk rain-down
e Sarazins livrer a honte.
and Saracens to-deliver to shame
Que vos feroie jo long conte?
What to-you would-make I long tale
Fors que tant com en aconsuirent
Except that as-many as thereof they-overtook
de cels qui en la vile furent,
of those who in the town were
qui a tens eissir ne se porent,
who in time to-go-out not themselves could
que cels erralment tué orent.
that those forthwith killed had
Eth vos la vile delivree
Behold you the town delivered
et gent a grant honte livree.
and folk to great shame delivered
Li rois après els s'en eissi,
The king after them himself-thence went-out
que le jor en ot feit ensi,
who the day thereof had done thus
e n'avoit lors que treis chevals;
and not-had then but three horses
qu'onques neis en Roncevals
that-ever not-even in Roncevaux

nus hom ne joefnes n'anciens
no man nor young nor-old
ne Sarazins ne cristiens
nor Saracen nor Christian
ne se contint a sa maniere;
not himself bore in his manner
car quant lors virent sa baniere,
for when then they-saw his banner
si fremirent destre e senestre.
so trembled right and left
La ne volsist nul coart estre,
There not would-have-wished any coward to-be
que Deu ne fist ne neif ne pluie,
for God not made nor snow nor rain
quant ele chet tant qu'ele henuie,
when it falls so-much that-it wearies
qui chiece plus espesement
which should-fall more thickly
que pilet plus menuement
than darts more finely
e quarel illuc ne pleusent,
and bolts there not rained
e que plus entr'els n'en eussent.
and that more among-them not-thereof had
Eth vos la novele aportee
Behold you the news brought
a Salehadin e contee
to Saladin and told

que sa gent si ert assaillie;
that his folk so was assailed
e il, la persone faillie,
and he the person failed
qui estoit plus irez que leus,
who was more angry than wolf
dut estre de peur fevreus;
ought be from fear feverish
si n'osa illoc plus atendre,
so not-dared there more to-await
ainz fist ses paveillons destendre
rather made his pavilions unpitch
e ses triés sus es plains ariere;
and his tents up in-the plains back
e li rois e sa preuz gent fiere
and the king and his worthy folk proud
tant les sivirent e chacerent
so-much them followed and chased
e ferirent e enchaucerent
and struck and pursued
as arbalestiers quis feroient,
to-the crossbowmen who-them struck
qui lor chevals lor ocioient,
who their horses to-them killed
e tant enchaucerent e trestrent
and so-much pursued and shot
que deus granz liues se retrestrent;
that two great leagues themselves withdrew

e li rois se fist sempres tendre
and the king himself made at-once pitch
la ou Salahadins atendre
there where Saladin to-await
ne l'osa, as places demaines;
not him-dared at-the places own
la se tendi Richarz li maines.
there himself pitched Richard the great

The Battle of Jaffa

XXII

Saladin learns that Richard has barely three horses, and his Mamluks and Kurds plot to take him in his tent at dawn. A Genoese sees their helmets and raises the cry, and Richard, with ten mounted men and his knights kneeling behind their shields and lances, crossbowmen between them, holds the shore while the Turks charge again and again. When they falter Richard charges and rescues the earl of Leicester and Ralph of Mauleon, and Saphadin sends him two Arab horses in the midst of the fight. Turks break into the town and Richard clears it, rallies the fleeing galley men, and fights on until evening, bristling with arrows like a hedgehog.

Quant cele jornee fu faite
When that day was done
e l'ost des Turcs se fu retraite,
and the-host of-the Turks itself was withdrawn
l'ost iert honie e vergondee
the-host was shamed and disgraced
que gent de pié l'ont reusee,
that folk of foot it-have repulsed

que si petit d'eforz avoient
who so little of-force had
contre tanz Turcs com il estoient,
against so-many Turks as they were
fors tant que Deus i ot main mise,
except so-much that God there had hand put
que sa gent ne fust pas malmise.
that his folk not were at-all ill-put
Estes vos que Salehadins
Behold you that Saladin
fist apeler ses Saraizins
made call his Saracens
e les Turcs de plus haute estrace,
and the Turks of more high lineage
si lor demande: «Qui vos chace?
so to-them asks Who you chases
Est donc l'ost d'Acre retornee
Is then the-host of-Acre returned
que si a ma gent atornee?
which so has my folk arrayed
Sunt il a pié ou a cheval
Are they on foot or on horse
cil qui venoient contre val?»
those who came toward below
Tant c'un traitres quil savoit,
Until that-a traitor who-it knew
e qui le roi veu avoit:
and who the king seen had

«Sire, chevalcheure nule
Lord mount any
n'ont il od els, cheval ne mule,
not-have they with them horse nor mule
fors que li rois, li bon vassals,
except that the king the good vassal
trova en Jaffe treis chevals:
found in Jaffa three horses
itant i a e puet avoir
so-much there has and can have
e neient plus por nul avoir;
and nothing more for any wealth
e s'il iert quil volsist enprendre,
and if-it were who-it should-wish to-undertake
l'on poroit lui e son cors prendre,
one could him and his body take
e sanz guaires i metre entente,
and without much there to-put attention
que il gist tot sels en sa tente.»
for he lies all alone in his tent
Ce fu un jor d'un samedi,
This was a day of-a Saturday
selonc l'estoire que jo di,
according-to the-history which I say
que la vile fu recovree
that the town was recovered
e des Sarazins delivree,
and from-the Saracens delivered

que merveilles i orent faites
which marvels there had done
e qui toz jorz seront retraites,
and which all days will-be recounted
car il orent Jaffe reprise,
for they had Jaffa retaken
e la gent crestiene ocise
and the folk Christian killed
malade qu'il orent trovee;
sick which-they had found
si fu la verité provee
so was the truth proved
qu'en la vile tanz pors troverent,
that-in the town so-many pigs they-found
que il ocistrent e tuerent,
which they killed and slew
que ço fu une enfinité;
that this was an infinity
e ço est seu de verité
and this is known of truth
que char de porc il ne manjuent,
that flesh of pig they not eat
e por ço volentiers les tuent:
and for this willingly them kill
ne heent plus rien terriene,
not hate more thing earthly
el despit de fei cristiene;
in-the despite of faith Christian

si avoient mis e mellez
so had put and mixed
la gent e les pors lez a lez;
the folk and the pigs side by side
mais li cristien les cors pristrent,
but the Christians the bodies took
cil qui por Deu s'en entremistrent,
those who for God themselves-thereof undertook
les cristiens toz entererent
the Christians all buried
e les Sarazins hors jeterent
and the Saracens out threw
qu'au samedi ocis avoient
whom-at-the Saturday killed they-had
ovec les pors, qui tant puoient
with the pigs which so-much stank
qu'il ne pooient endurer.
that-they not could endure

Eth vos que li rois fist ovrer
Behold you that the king made work
le diemaine e le lundi
the Sunday and the Monday
al mur de Jaffe e le marsdi,
at-the wall of Jaffa and the Tuesday
la ou le virent depecié,
there where it they-saw broken
tant que auques l'orent redrescié,
until that somewhat it-they-had set-up-again
come sanz chalz e sanz mortier,
as without lime and without mortar

a defendre s'en fust mestier;
to defend if-thereof should-be need

mais l'ost iert par dehors es tentes
but the-host was by outside in-the tents

ou plus orent de granz ententes.
where more they-had of great concerns

Li Mamelon Salehadin,
The Mamluks (of-)Saladin

cil de Halape e li Cordin,
those of Aleppo and the Kurds

la legiere bachelerie
the light young-knighthood

de la paiene gent haie,
of the pagan folk hated

a un parlement s'asemblerent,
at a parley themselves-assembled

e distrent tuit que honiz erent
and said all that shamed they-were

que por tant gent guerpi avoient
that for so-much folk abandoned they-had

Jaffe come li nostre estoient,
Jaffa as the ours were

e qu'il n'avoient nul cheval.
and that-they not-had any horse

Ço distrent a mont e a val
This they-said to mount and to below

entr'els tant qu'il s'entrefierent
among-themselves so-much that-they themselves-pledged-each-other

e tant que illoc se vanterent
and so-much that there themselves boasted

qu'en sa tente le roi prendroient
that-in his tent the king they-would-take
e que a Saleadin le menroient,
and that to Saladin him they-would-lead
e fu l'ovre ensi affiee.
and was the-work thus pledged
Eth vos que en une gualee
Behold you that in a galley
vint li cuens Henris de Champaine
came the count Henry of Champagne
de Cesaire, il e sa compaigne.
from Caesarea he and his company
L'ost ert a Cesaire venue,
The-host was at Caesarea come
e s'iert mal gré suen detenue
and itself-was ill will his detained
por les Sarazins qui guardouent
for the Saracens who guarded
les flums e qui les pas guaitoient,
the rivers and who the passes watched
si que li rois secors ne aie
so that the king succor nor aid
n'ot de tote lor compaignie
not-had of all their company
fors seul de son neveu le conte.
except alone of his nephew the count
Onques n'i pot avoir par conte,
Ever not-there could have by count

a trespasser la fort jornee
to pass the hard day
que hom li avoit atornee,
which one to-him had arranged
fors que tant seulement cinquante
except that so-much only fifty
chevalers ou al plus seisante,
knights or at-the most sixty
e serjanz e arbalestiers
and sergeants and crossbowmen
preuz e seurs de lor mestiers,
worthy and sure of their crafts
e gent de Genve e de Pise
and folk of Genoa and of Pisa
qui por Deu s'ert illoc promise,
who for God itself-was there promised
e autre genz entre deus mile;
and other folk about two thousand
ne illoc puis que rescust la vile,
nor there since that he-rescued the town
ne pot aveir quinze chevals
not could have fifteen horses
assemblez entre bons e mals,
assembled between good and bad
dont il ot puis si grant sofraite
whereof he had after so great lack
que sa gent fust perie et fraite
that his folk would-have-been perished and broken

se Deu ne l'eust guarantie
if God not it-had guaranteed
des Turs e de lor aatie.
from-the Turks and from their challenge
Ore orez une grant merveille,
Now you-will-hear a great marvel
dont tot li mondes s'esmerveille,
whereof all the world itself-marvels
que nostre gent fust tote prise,
that our folk would-have-been all taken
le mecresdi, par cele emprise
the Wednesday by that enterprise
que cil durent prendre le roi,
that those were-to take the king
si Deu n'en eust pris conroi.
if God not-thereof had taken measure
La nuit, a hore de matines
The night at hour of matins
monterent les genz sarazines,
mounted the folk Saracen
si conreerent lor batailles,
so arrayed their battles
e puis lacierent lor ventailles
and then laced their ventails
e chevalcherent a la lune.
and rode by the moon
Iloques fist Dampnedeus une
There did Lord-God one
de ses glorioses bontez,
of his glorious goodnesses

e bien doit estre recontez
and well ought be recounted
quant il fait une bele ovraine.
when he does a fair work
Estes les vos a val la plaine,
Behold them you to below the plain
chevalchant tut sereement;
riding all closely
e Dampnedeus nomeement
and Lord-God namely
leva entr'els unes tençons
raised among-them some quarrels
des Cordins e des Mamelons,
of-the Kurds and of-the Mamluks
saveir mon li quels descendroient
to-know indeed the which would-dismount
a pié e noz genz atendroient
on foot and our folk would-await
qu'il ne peussent revertir
that-they not could return
al chastel por els guarantir.
to-the castle for themselves to-protect
Chescons disoit: «Vos descendroiz,
Each-one said You shall-dismount
mes vos.» «Mes vos.» «Mes vos, c'est droiz;
but you But you But you it-is right
nos devon mielz estre a cheval.»
we ought better to-be on horse
E vindrent tençant contre val,
And came quarreling toward below

e tant dura l'estrif illoques
and so-much lasted the-strife there
des uns et des autres ovecques
of-the ones and of-the others with-them
qu'il orent le cler jor veu,
that-they had the clear day seen
si come Deus l'ot porveu;
so as God it-had provided
e li rois dormoit en sa tente.
and the king slept in his tent
Oiez bele aventure e gente
Hear fair adventure and gentle
d'un Genevois qui s'iert levez
of-a Genoese who himself-was risen
e ert a la berue alez
and was to the wasteland gone
tot droit al point de l'enjorner.
all straight at-the point of the-daybreak
Si com il voloit retorner,
So as he wished to-return
si oi les Turs qui venoient
so heard the Turks who came
e vit les hiaumes qui lusoient,
and saw the helmets which shone
si come son chief abeissa;
so as his head he-lowered
onques puis sa voiz ne cessa
ever after his voice not ceased

de crier que noz genz s'armassent
from crying that our folk themselves-should-arm
e que tuit a armes alassent;
and that all to arms should-go
e li rois del cri s'esveilla,
and the king from-the cry himself-awoke
qui le jor puis mult traveilla.
who the day after much toiled
De son lit sailli sus en piez
From his bed leapt up on feet
e vesti, si com jo suspiez,
and put-on so as I suspect
un blanc hauberc fort e tenant;
a white hauberk strong and holding
si comanda de mantenant
so commanded of at-once
ses compaignons a esveillier;
his companions to waken
si ne fait pas a merveillier
so not makes at-all to marvel
se de si faite suzpresture
if of so made surprise
ot illoques contrepresture
had there counter-surprise
a els vestir e a armer;
to themselves dress and to arm
car jo vos puis bien afermer
for I you can well affirm
qu'il furent si hasté illoques,
that-they were so hastened there

le roi e assez autre oveques,
the king and enough others with-him
que jambes desarmees nues
that legs unarmed naked
e descovertes fors des nues,
and uncovered except of-the clouds
e tels i ot tot nuz sanz braies,
and such there had all naked without breeches
qui i orent assauz e plaies,
who there had assaults and wounds
se combatirent a jornee;
themselves fought at day's-length
sis greva plus qu'autre rien nee.
so-them grieved more than-other thing born
Si come nostre gent s'armoient,
So as our folk themselves-armed
e li Sarazin apresmoient.
and the Saracens approached
Eth vos que li rois fu montez,
Behold you that the king was mounted
e n'ot o li d'omes contez
and not-had with him of-men counted
fors dis a cheval seulement;
except ten on horse only
si dit l'estoire finement
so says the-history finely
que li quens Henris de Champaigne
that the count Henry of Champagne
fu a cheval e sa compaigne;
was on horse and his company

si i fu li quens de Leicestre,
so there was the count of Leicester
Roberz, qui bien i deveit estre;
Robert who well there ought be
Bertelemeu de Mortemer
Bartholomew of Mortimer
fu a cheval, al men esmer;
was on horse to-the my reckoning
si i fu de Mallion Raols,
so there was of Mauleon Ralph
qui onc ne fu d'armes saols;
who ever not was of-arms sated
si i fu de Chavigni Andreus,
so there was of Chauvigny Andrew
qui fort e preu fu a estreus;
who strong and worthy was in stirrups
si i fu Girard de Fornival
so there was Gerard of Furnival
oveques le roi a cheval;
with the king on horse
si i fu Rogiers de Saci,
so there was Roger of Sacy
qui sist en un povre ronci;
who sat on a poor nag
si i fu Guillames de l'Estanc,
so there was William of l'Estanc
qui ot un cheval trop estanc;
who had a horse too-much tired
si i fu Hue de Noefvile,
so there was Hugh of Neuville

un ardi serjant e nobile.
a bold sergeant and noble
Henri le Tyois el conroi
Henry the German in-the array
portoit la baniere le roi.
carried the banner (of-)the king
Eth vos nostre gent conreee
Behold you our folk arrayed
contre l'ost cruel desreee,
against the-host cruel disordered
e par batailles establie,
and by battalions established
chescone a sa conestablie.
each-one at its constabulary
Li chevalers sor la marine
The knights upon the shore
furent por la gent sarazine
were for the folk Saracen
vers Saint Nicholas sor senestre:
toward Saint Nicholas on left
illoques lor convenoit estre
there to-them behooved to-be
quar li plus des Turs se traioient
for the most of-the Turks themselves drew
e taburoient e braioient;
and drummed and howled
e par devant les cortillages
and by before the garden-plots
ot mis genz de plusors lignages:
had put folk of several lineages

la ot Pisanz e Geneveis;
there had Pisans and Genoese
si ne seroit dit eneveis
so not would-be said quickly
ne reconté les envaies
nor recounted the assaults
que il orent des genz haies.
which they had from-the folk hated
Li Turc comencerent a traire,
The Turks began to shoot
a huer, a crier, a braire;
to shout to cry to howl
la veissiez merveilles dreites
there you-might-have-seen marvels right
e noz bones genz mult destreites:
and our good folk much distressed
a geneillons s'agenoillerent,
on knees themselves-knelt
e targes e escuz drescierent
and targes and shields raised
devant els, en lor mains lor glaives;
before them in their hands their lances
e li rois qui d'armes ert saives
and the king who of-arms was wise
fist desoz les targes mucier
made beneath the targes to-hide
entre deus un arbalestier
between two a crossbowman

e un home qui li tendoit
and a man who to-him drew
s'arbaleste, e il li rendoit
his-crossbow and he to-him handed
quant il la li avoit tendue:
when he it to-him had drawn
par ço fu l'ost mult defendue.
by this was the-host much defended
Ensi s'estoient aresté.
Thus themselves-were halted
Or ne doit pas estre doté
Now not ought at-all be doubted
que cil qui en tel plait estoient
that those who in such plight were
contre tanz Turs come veoient
against so-many Turks as they-saw
n'eussent peor de lor testes;
not-should-have fear for their heads
si fu si voir com vos ci estes
so was so true as you here are
que li rois ala reerchant
that the king went going-round
les chevalers e preeschant,
the knights and preaching
e Johans de Preals ovecques
and John of Preaux with-him
lor aloit sermonant iloques,
to-them went exhorting there
e disoient: «Ore i parra,
and said Now there it-will-appear

tant come Deus son cors guarra,
so-long as God his body will-guard
qui se penera de bien faire,
who himself will-toil to well do
qu'ore n'i a mes autre affaire
for-now not-there has more other business
fors de noz cors richement vendre
except of our bodies richly to-sell
e de nostre martire atendre,
and of our martyrdom to-await
quant Deus le nos a envoié.
when God it to-us has sent
Or sumes nos dreit avoié,
Now are we right set-on-the-way
quant il par sa bonté meismes
when he by his goodness himself
nos done ço que nos queimes.
to-us gives this which we sought
Ci gisent noz droites soudees.»
Here lie our right wages
Eth vos les batailles fermees
Behold you the battles closed
e les conreiz des Turs venir,
and the companies of-the Turks come
e nostre gent toz jorz tenir
and our folk all days to-hold
lor jambes el sablon fichees,
their legs in-the sand fixed
totes les lances esloignees,
all the lances stretched-out

e apresté de recevoir.
and ready to receive
Eth vos les batailles movoir
Behold you the battles to-move
de la fause gent sarazine
of the false folk Saracen
o tel frainte e od tel ravine
with such crash and with such violence
que si nostre gent se meussent,
that if our folk themselves had-moved
que tot tresperciez les eussent,
that all pierced-through them they-would-have
e avoit bien, que jo n'i faille,
and there-had well that I not-there may-fail
mil Turs en chescone bataille;
thousand Turks in each battle
e quant a meismes d'els furent
and when to very-near of-them they-were
et il virent qu'il ne se murent,
and they saw that-they not themselves moved
res a res d'els en sus guenchirent;
close by close from them up they-swerved
e arbalestiers destendirent,
and crossbowmen loosed
que li Turc n'oserent atendre;
whom the Turks not-dared to-await
et il les faisoient estendre:
and they them made to-stretch
es cors e es chevals feroient;
in-the bodies and in-the horses struck

e les eschieles revenoient
and the squadrons came-back
e autre foiz les reproçoient
and other time them approached-again
e flatisoient e tornoient,
and flung-themselves and turned
e plusors foiz ensi le firent.
and several times thus it did
E quant li rois e sa gent virent
And when the king and his folk saw
cels qui tant a cheval estoient
those who so-much on horse were
e que autrement ne feroient,
and that otherwise not would-do
les fers des glaives abeissiez,
the irons of-the lances lowered
s'i feri chescons esleissiez
so-there struck each-one at-full-tilt
enz en mi liu de la grant presse
in in mid place of the great press
de la mescreant gent engresse,
of the misbelieving folk fierce
e si durement assemblerent
and so hard engaged
que trestut li conroi tremblerent
that all the arrays trembled
desi que a la tierce guarde.
until that to the third guard
Estes vos que li rois reguarde,
Behold you that the king looks

si vit cheoir illoc sor destre
so saw fall there on right
le preu conte de Leicestre,
the worthy count of Leicester
qui del cheval ert abatuz
who from-the horse was struck-down
e s'estoit tres bien combatuz,
and himself-was very well fought
quant li preuz reis l'ala rescore.
when the worthy king him-went to-rescue
La veissiez tanz Turs acorre
There you-might-have-seen so-many Turks run-up
droit a la baniere al lion!
straight at the banner with-the lion
Eth vos Raols de Mallion
Behold you Ralph of Mauleon
que li Turc en menoient pris;
whom the Turks thence led taken
e li rois son cheval de pris
and the king his horse of worth
fiert des esperons es costez
strikes with-the spurs in-the sides
tant qu'il fu de lor mains ostez.
until that-he was from their hands taken-away
En la presse iert li rois puissanz
In the press was the king mighty
contre les Turs e les Persanz;
against the Turks and the Persians

onques mes om fieble ne forz
ever more man feeble nor strong
ne fist en un jor tel efforz:
not made in a day such effort
car es Turs s'enbatoit dedenz,
for among-the Turks himself-rushed in
e les fendoit desi qu'as denz,
and them split until that-to-the teeth
e tantes foiz s'i embati
and so-many times himself-there rushed
e a tanz cops s'en abati
and with so-many blows so-thereof struck-down
e tant de ferir se greva
and so-much from striking himself grieved
que le cuir de ses mains creva.
that the skin of his hands burst
Eth vos un Sarazin poignant,
Behold you a Saracen spurring
e des autres Turs esloignant
and from-the other Turks withdrawing
sor un destrier corant e rade:
upon a charger running and swift
c'ert li preuz Saffadin d'Arcade,
it-was the worthy Saphadin of-Arcadia
cil qui fesoit les granz proesces
he who did the great prowesses
e les bontez e les largesces;
and the goodnesses and the largesses
cil vint poignant, si com jo dis,
he came spurring so as I said

o tot deus chevals arabis
with all two horses Arab
qu'il tramist al rei d'Engletere;
which-he sent to-the king of-England
si lui fist proier e requerre
so to-him made pray and ask
por ses proesces qu'il savoit
for his prowesses which-he knew
e por hardement qu'il avoit
and for boldness which-he had
que par tel covent i montast,
that by such covenant there he-should-mount
si Deu d'illoques l'en jetast
if God from-there him-thence should-cast
e sain e sauf, qu'il le veist,
and sound and safe that-he him should-see
que aucon gueredon l'en feist:
that some reward him-thereof he-should-make
puis en ot il riches loiers;
after thereof had he rich rewards
e li rois les prist volenters,
and the king them took willingly
e dist encor meint autretel
and said still many-a such
de son enemi plus mortel
from his enemy more mortal
en prendroit il s'il en venoit
thereof would-take he if-he thereof came
a tel besoing com il avoit.
to such need as he had

Eth vos la bataille creue:
Behold you the battle increased
onques tele ne fud veue;
ever such not was seen
tote la terre esteit coverte
all the land was covered
des pilez a la gent colverte,
with-the darts of the folk base
que il coillouent a braciees.
which they gathered by armfuls
La veissiez tant genz blesciees
There you-might-have-seen so-many folk wounded
que li galiot s'en fuirent
that the galley-men themselves-thence fled
es gualees dont il eissirent:
into-the galleys whence they went-out
qui en tel point fuit mult s'avile.
who in such point flees much himself-debases
Eth vos le cri devers la vile
Behold you the cry from-toward the town
que li Turc a plain se metoient,
that the Turks in full themselves put
qui noz genz sozprendre voloient
who our folk to-surprise wished
e par devant e par deriere;
and by before and by behind
e li preuz rois od sa baniere
and the worthy king with his banner

i vint sei tierz de chevaliers
there came himself third of knights
* * *
(lacuna)
e si tost com il i entra,
and so soon as he there entered
en mi une voie encontra
in mid a way met
treis Turs de mult riche hernois,
three Turks of very rich harness
e il les feri come rois
and he them struck as king
e encontra si durement
and met so hard
que il guaigna eraument
that he gained forthwith
deus chevals e les Turs ocist,
two horses and the Turks killed
e les autres a force mist
and the others by force put
hors de la vile, e passa lor,
out of the town and passed them
e fist estoper des qu'en l'or
and made stop-up until into the-edge
la porte par ont il entroient,
the gate by where they entered
e mist gardes qui la gardoient.
and put guards who it guarded

Eth le vos tot droit as galees
Behold him you all straight to-the galleys
ou ses genz s'en erent alees
where his folk themselves-thence were gone
par grant peor e par destresce;
by great fear and by distress
e Richarz, le filz de proesce,
and Richard the son of prowess
les raloit toz encoragier,
them went-again all to-encourage
e refist a terre nagier,
and made-again to land row
e les remist tot en comune,
and them put-again all in common
si qu'il ne remist en chescune
so that-he not left in each
des galees que cinc sanz plus,
of-the galleys but five without more
e s'en revint od le surplus
and himself-thence came-back with the surplus
a l'ost, qui n'ert point reposee,
to the-host which not-was at-all rested
e lors fist il la pointe osee:
and then made he the charge daring
onques mes tele ne fu faite,
ever more such not was made
que il poinst en la gent forfaite
that he spurred into the folk forfeit
tant en parfont qu'il le covrirent,
so-much in deep that-they him covered

si que nul de ses genz nel virent,
so that anyone of his folk not-him saw
si que por poi qu'il n'i alerent,
so that for little that-they not-there went
e qu'il ne se desconreerent;
and that-they not themselves disarrayed
sis eussoms trestoz perduz:
so-them we-would-have all lost
mais li reis n'iert point esperduz,
but the king not-was at-all distraught
ainz feri avant et ariere,
rather struck forward and back
qu'il fesoit illoc tel chariere
for-he made there such cartway
d'une espee que il tenoit
with-a sword which he held
que en quel liu qu'ele venoit,
that in whatever place that-it came
fust en cors ou fust en cheval,
were-it in body or were-it in horse
qu'il detrenchoit tot contre val.
that-he cut-to-pieces all toward below
La fist il le cop, ço me semble,
There made he the blow this to-me seems
del braz e de la teste ensemble
of-the arm and of the head together
d'un admirad armé de fer
of-an emir armed with iron
qu'il envoia droit a enfer;
whom-he sent straight to hell

e par cel cop que li Turc virent
and by that blow which the Turks saw
si large place puis li firent
so wide place after to-him they-made
qu'il revint, merci Deu, sanz perte;
that-he came-back thanks (to-)God without loss
mais sa persone iert si coverte,
but his person was so covered
son cheval e ses covertures,
his horse and his coverings
des saetes as genz oscures
with-the arrows of-the folk dark
qu'il orent trait a entençon
which-they had shot with intent
qu'il resembloit un heriçon.
that-he resembled a hedgehog
Ensi se vint de la bataille,
Thus himself came from the battle
qui dura tote jor a taille
which lasted all day by measure
del matin jusqu'a l'avespree,
from-the morning until-to the-evening
si cruel e si destempree
so cruel and so immoderate
que si Deus n'eust sustenue
that if God not-had sustained
nostre gent, mar i fust venue;
our folk ill there would-it-be come
voirement i fu, ço veimes,
truly there it-was this we-saw

quant onques ome n'i perdimes
when ever man not-there we-lost
cel jor qu'un ou deus seulement,
that day but-one or two only
e il perdirent eralment
and they lost forthwith
plus de dis e cinc cent chevals,
more than ten and five hundred horses
qui gisoient par mons, par vals,
which lay through mountains through vales
e plus de set cent Turs oveques,
and more than seven hundred Turks with-them
qui toz gisoient mort illoques;
who all lay dead there
ne por tot cel lor grant desroi
nor for all that their great disorder
n'en menerent il pas le roi,
not-thereof led they at-all the king
qui par devant lor genz haies
who by before their folk hated
ot feit ses granz chevaleries,
had done his great chivalries
si que trestuit s'en esbahirent
so that all themselves-thereof were-dismayed
de ses granz proesces qu'il virent.
at his great prowesses which-they saw
E de tels qui o lui estoient
And of such who with him were
qui desqu'a la mort se metoient.
who until-to the death themselves put

The King's Sickness, and the Truce

XXIII

Saladin asks where those are who were to take the king, and a Turk tells him none dares to meet Richard's blow. Richard and his men fall sick from their labors and the stench of the dead, and Saladin offers battle; Richard says he will wait for him on his knees if he must. The French at Caesarea will not come, the Templars and Hospitallers will not hold the castles without him, and Richard, through Saphadin, makes a truce: Ascalon razed, Jaffa his, the coast in peace, and the Sepulcher open to pilgrims. He tells Saladin he will come back in three years to take the land, and Saladin answers that he would rather lose it to Richard than to any prince he knows. Richard is carried to Haifa; the French ask to make their pilgrimage, and he has Saladin admit none without his letters or Henry's; most of them sail for France, and Richard's own people go up to the Sepulcher in three companies.

Quant Dampnedeus par sa franchise
When Lord-God by his nobleness
ot espernié en itel guise
had spared in such guise
le roi e la gent cristiene
the king and the folk Christian
del pueple e de la gent paiene,
from-the people and from the folk pagan
e l'ost se fu ariere traite,
and the-host itself was back drawn
une parole fu retraite
a word was recounted
que li soldans Salehadins
that the sultan Saladin
demanda a ses Sarazins
asked to his Saracens

par rampone de lor desroi:
by mockery of their disorder
«Ou sunt cil qui ont pris le roi?
Where are those who have taken the king
Ou est cil qui le m'en ameine?»
Where is he who him to-me-thence brings
Un Turs d'une terre lointaine
A Turk of-a land distant
li dist: «Sire, jol vos dirai,
to-him said Lord I-it to-you shall-say
si que de rien n'en mentirai.
so that of anything not-thereof shall-I-lie
Onc mes tel om ne fu veuz,
Ever more such man not was seen
si preuz ne si aperceuz,
so worthy nor so perceptive
ne qui mielz seit d'armes provez:
nor who better be of-arms proved
a toz les besoins iert trovez;
at all the needs he-was found
e mult nus nus entremeimes
and much we ourselves undertook
e assez granz cops i meismes;
and enough great blows there we-put
mais onques nel poeismes prendre,
but ever not-him could-we take
car nus ne l'ose a cop atendre,
for anyone not him-dares at blow to-await
tant est hardiz e maniables.»
so-much is bold and nimble

Segnor, nel tenez mie a fables
Lords not-it hold at-all for fables
que li Turc bien nel coneusent
that the Turks well not-him should-know
e que illoc pris ne l'eussent,
and that there taken not him-they-should-have
ne fust Deus e ses granz visteces,
if-not had-been God and his great swiftnesses
que il fist la tantes proesces
that he did there so-many prowesses
e tant soffri le jor illoques,
and so-much suffered the day there
e li autre prodome ovecques,
and the other worthy-men with-him
qu'il chairent en maladie
that-they fell into sickness
pres de la gent que Deus maudie,
near of the folk whom God curse
que del fes de cele besoigne,
what from-the burden of that business
que des puors de la charoine
what from-the stenches of the carrion
dont la vile ert si corompue
whereof the town was so corrupted
e lor nature si rompue
and their nature so broken
por un poi que tuit n'i mururent,
for a little that all not-there died
e li rois e cil qui i furent.
and the king and those who there were

Illoques ou li rois estoit
There where the king was
malades, e lui mesestoit,
sick and to-him went-ill
la li manda Salehadins
there to-him sent Saladin
qu'entre lui e ses Sarazins
that-between him and his Saracens
l'iroient la ou il ert prendre,
him-would-go there where he was to-take
s'il les osoit illoc atendre;
if-he them dared there to-await
e li rois li manda anoire,
and the king to-him sent forthwith
se ço peust savoir e croire,
if this he-could know and believe
que il illoques l'atendroit,
that he there him-would-await
e que il ja en nul endroit,
and that he ever in any place
tant com peust sor piez ester
so-long as he-could on feet to-stand
ne sor ses genoilz arester,
nor on his knees to-stay
ne lui fuireit plein pié de terre:
not from-him would-flee full foot of land
e ensi ert prise la guerre,
and thus was taken the war

e Deus savoit bien l'aisement
and God knew well the-ease
dont il parloit si richement.
whereof he spoke so richly
Lors remanda il par le conte
Then sent-back he by the count
Henri (ce dist l'estoire e conte)
Henry this says the-history and tells
a Cesaire por les Franceis,
to Caesarea for the French
cels qui erent venu ançois,
those who were come before
e por l'autre gent qu'il venissent
and for the-other folk that-they should-come
e que la terre sustenissent;
and that the land they-should-sustain
si lor manda de l'afiance,
so to-them sent of the-pledge
si lor manda la mesestance;
so to-them sent the distress
mais onques nel voldrent secure,
but ever not-him they-wished to-succor
ainz le leisserent tot encure,
rather him they-left all to-come-to-grief
se il n'eust la triuue prise.
if he not-had the truce taken

* * *

(lacuna)

Mais nul ne l'en deust emprendre,
But anyone not him-thereof ought blame

car li Turc le venissent prendre
for the Turks him would-have-come to-take
e de son cors li meschaist
and of his body to-him would-have-gone-ill
e Eschalone il i perdist,
and Ascalon he there would-have-lost
que ele fust prise a droture
for it would-have-been taken by right
e Sur e Acre en aventure.
and Tyre and Acre in hazard
Li rois iert a Jaffe en dotance,
The king was at Jaffa in fear
a meschief e a mesestance,
at mischief and at distress
si se porpensa qu'il feroit,
so himself bethought what-he would-do
e que d'iloc il s'en iroit
and that from-there he himself-thence would-go
por la vile qui iert enferme
for the town which was sick
e qui n'estoit ne fort ne ferme.
and which not-was nor strong nor firm
Lors manda le conte Henri,
Then sent-for the count Henry
cui sa seror avoit nurri,
whom his sister had nourished
e si manda por les Templiers,
and so sent for the Templars
si manda les Ospitaliers,
so sent-for the Hospitallers

e lor ramentut son meschief
and to-them recalled his mischief
qu'il aveit al cuer e al chief,
which-he had at-the heart and at-the head
e lor dist que li un alassent
and to-them said that the ones should-go
a Escalone e la gardassent,
to Ascalon and it should-guard
e li autre illoc remansissent
and the others there should-remain
a Jaffe e bien guarde en preisent,
at Jaffa and well guard thereof should-take
e il a Acre s'en vendroit
and he to Acre himself-thence would-come
e medecine illoc prendroit;
and medicine there would-take
e dit que il ne pot el faire.
and said that he not could else do
Que vos diroie d'autre affaire?
What to-you would-I-say of-other business
Fors que trestut s'en escondirent,
Except that all themselves-thence excused
e tot en travers respondirent
and all in across answered
que ja chastel ne guarderoient
that ever castle not would-guard
sanz lui, n'en guarde ne seroient,
without him nor-in guard not would-be
e s'en alerent sanz plus dire.
and themselves-thence went without more to-say

Eht vos le roi en trop grant ire.
Behold you the king in too great wrath
Quant li rois vit que tot li mondes,
When the king saw that all the world
qui n'est guaires liaus ne mondes,
which not-is much loyal nor pure
lui fu tot en travers failliz,
to-him was all in across failed
lors fu troblez e maubailliz
then was troubled and ill-handled
e durement desconseilliez.
and hard at-a-loss
Seignors, ne vos esmerveilliez
Lords not you marvel
s'il fist del mielz que il savoit
if-he did of-the best that he knew
selonc le tens que il avoit:
according-to the time that he had
car qui crient honte e siut henur
for who fears shame and follows honor
choisist de deus mals le menor;
chooses of two ills the lesser
si velt mielz une triuue quere
so wishes better a truce to-seek
que leisser en peril la terre:
than to-leave in peril the land
car tuit li autre la leissoient,
for all the others it left
e a lor nefs a plain aloient.
and to their ships in full went

Lors manda il a Saffadin,
Then sent he to Saphadin
qui iert freres Salehadin,
who was brother (of-)Saladin
qui molt l'amoit por sa proesce,
who much him-loved for his prowess
qu'il li porchaçast sanz peresce
that-he for-him should-procure without sloth
la meillor triuue qu'il poroit,
the best truce that-he could
e il devers lui la donroit.
and he from-toward him it would-give
E Saffadin mult se pena,
And Saphadin much himself toiled
e la parole tant mena
and the word so-much led
que la triuue fu devisee
that the truce was devised
de Salehadin e nomee,
by Saladin and named
par tel covent que Eschalone,
by such covenant that Ascalon
qui mult ert contre sa corone,
which much was against his crown
seroit abatue e charoit,
would-be struck-down and would-fall
e que nus ne la fermeroit
and that anyone not it would-fortify

devant treis anz, mais lor l'eust
before three years but then it-should-have
e refeist qui plus peust; 11780
and should-rebuild who more could
e Jaffe seroit refermee
and Jaffa would-be refortified
e de cristiens repuplee;
and by Christians repeopled
e trestut l'autre plain pais,
and all the-other plain country
ou nus n'ert lores estais,
where anyone not-was then established
contre le mont e la marine, 11785
toward the mountain and the shore
seroit en triuue estable e fine;
would-be in truce stable and final
e qui la voldroit droit tenir
and who it would-wish right to-hold
que sauf aler e sauf venir
that safe to-go and safe to-come
poroit le sepulcre requere;
could the sepulcher seek
e que sans treu par la terre 11790
and that without tribute through the land
iroient les marcheandises.
would-go the merchandises
Ensi alerent les devises
Thus went the terms

e ensi fu la triuue escrite
and thus was the truce written
e reportee al rei e dite;
and brought-back to-the king and said
e il qui estoit sanz aie
and he who was without aid
e si pres de la gent haie,
and so near of the folk hated
e l'ost ert al mains a deus liuues,
and the-host was at-the least at two leagues
prist ensi faitement les triuues;
took thus in-manner the truces
e qui autrement en diroit
and who otherwise thereof would-say
l'estoire, si en mentiroit.
the-history so thereof would-lie
Quant la triuue fu aportee
When the truce was brought
al rei, e il l'ot creantee,
to-the king and he it-had granted
quant vit que il ne pot el faire,
when he-saw that he not could else do
lors ne pot son corage taire,
then not could his heart keep-silent
ainz manda a Salehadin,
rather sent to Saladin
oiant maint noble Sarazin,
hearing many-a noble Saracen

e lui devisa par devise
and to-him set-out by terms
qu'il n'avoit cele triuue prise,
that-he not-had that truce taken
ce seust il veraiement,
this should-know he truly
tresque a treis anz seulement,
until to three years only
l'un por aler s'en en sa terre,
the-one for to-go himself-thence into his land
l'autre por aveir gent e querre,
the-other for to-have folk and to-seek
le tierz por revenir e prendre
the third for to-come-back and to-take
la terre s'il l'osoit atendre.
the land if-he him-dared to-await
E li soudans lui remanda
And the sultan to-him sent-back
par cels que il i comanda
by those whom he there commanded
que par la loi que il tenoit
that by the law which he held
e par le Deu qu'il sostenoit
and by the God whom-he upheld
qu'il preiset tant sa grant proesce
that-he prized so-much his great prowess
e son grant cuer e sa vistesce,
and his great heart and his swiftness

que se la terre esteit conquise
that if the land were conquered
a son vivant en nule guise,
in his lifetime in any guise
que c'ert li princes qu'il savoit
that it-was the prince whom-he knew
de toz cels qu'il veu avoit
of all those whom-he seen had
11825 qu'il mielz volsist qui la preist
whom-he rather would-wish who it should-take
sor lui a force e conqueist.
upon him by force and should-conquer
Ensi quida li rois ovrer,
Thus thought the king to-work
e le sepulcre recovrer;
and the sepulcher to-recover
mais ne vit pas ne n'entendoit
but not saw at-all nor not-understood
11830 içо que a l'oil lui pendoit.
this which at the-eye to-him hung
Quant cele triuue fu juree
When that truce was sworn
de deus parz e asseuree,
from two sides and assured
e les covenances retraites,
and the covenants recounted
e les chartres en furent faites,
and the charters thereof were made

e li bons reis s'en fist porter
and the good king himself-thence made carry
por lui guarir e conforter
for himself to-heal and to-comfort
a Chayphas sor la marine,
to Haifa on the shore
ou il prist illoc medecine.
where he took there medicine
E li Franceis qui sujornoient
And the French who stayed
d'aler en France desiroient
of-going into France desired
* * *
(lacuna)
que en lor pelerinage iroient,
that into their pilgrimage they-would-go
e la triuue avoient blasmee,
and the truce had blamed
e despite e mesaamee,
and despised and disliked
e ne voldrent Jaffe rescore
and not wished Jaffa to-rescue
al besoing ne le roi sucore;
at-the need nor the king to-succor
e quant al roi fu fait savoir
and when to-the king was made know
qu'il voloient conduit avoir
that-they wished escort to-have
a faire lor pelerinage,
to make their pilgrimage

e li rois prist lues son message,
and the king took at-once his message
si manda a Salehadin
so sent to Saladin
e a l'admirald Saffadin
and to the-emir Saphadin
qu'il ne leissassent cristien
that-they not should-let Christian
aler, joefne ne ancien,
go young nor old
en Jerusalem sanz ses letres,
into Jerusalem without his letters
s'il voleient qu'il fust lor detres
if-they wished that-he should-be their debtor
ou sanz les le conte Henri;
or without those (of-)the count Henry
e i furent si tres mari
and there were so very grieved
del mandement quant il le sorent
at-the message when they it knew
que li plusor a l'ainz qu'il porent
that the most at the-soonest that-they could
se chargerent e s'atornerent
themselves loaded and themselves-arrayed
e en France se retornerent.
and into France themselves returned
Quant la presse fud departie
When the press was departed
des Franceis, la greignor partie,
of-the French the greater part

de cels qui le roi maudisoient
of those who the king cursed
e qui plus destorbé l'avoient,
and who more hindered him-had
onques ne s'i pooit fier,
ever not himself-there could trust
e lores fist li rois crier
and then made the king cry
que ses genz al sepulcre alassent,
that his folk to-the sepulcher should-go
e que lor offrendes portassent
and that their offerings they-should-carry
a Jaffe a l'aide des murs fere.
to Jaffa to the-aid of-the walls to-make
E que vos direie altre afaire?
And what to-you would-I-say other business
Fors que par tres conestablies,
Except that by three constabularies
si com els furent establies,
so as they were established
alerent el sepulcre ensemble.
they-went to-the sepulcher together
L'un conestable, ço me semble,
The-one constable this to-me seems
si i fu Andreus de Chavignié,
so there was Andrew of Chauvigny
si a peor moine a Cloignié;
so has worse monk at Cluny
e l'autre fu Raols Tessons,
and the-other was Ralph Tesson

qui mult amoit notes e sons;
who much loved notes and sounds
de Salesbire li evesques,
of Salisbury the bishop
qui depuis fu faiz arcevesques,
who since was made archbishop
mena la dereraine rote;
led the last troop
içe sai jo tres bien sanz dote.
this know I very well without doubt
Quant cil des chartres saisi furent,
When those of-the charters seized were
eth vos que li pelerin murent,
behold you that the pilgrims moved
e errerent serré en turbe.
and journeyed close in throng
Oiez come peschié desturbe
Hear how sin hinders
maintes genz qui bien volent faire
many folk who well wish to-do
en maint liu e par maint affaire.
in many-a place and by many-a business
Es chemins par ou il erroient,
On-the roads by where they journeyed
es plains de Rame ou il passoient,
in-the plains of Ramla where they passed

eth vos que li baron parlerent
behold you that the barons spoke
illoc ensemble e deviserent
there together and devised
que Salehadin manderoient 11895
that Saladin they-would-send-word
en Jerusalen qu'il venoient
in Jerusalem that-they came
veoir le sepulcre e requere,
to-see the sepulcher and to-seek
o les briés le roi d'Engleterre.
with the letters (of-)the king of-England

The Pilgrimage, and the King's Departure

XXIV

The messengers sent ahead of Andrew of Chauvigny's company sleep on the road, and the pilgrims arrive before their safe-conduct; Saphadin rebukes them, the Turks ask Saladin for vengeance, but his council forbids a breach of the truce and the pilgrims are escorted to the city. They see the Holy Cross, kiss the Sepulcher, Calvary, Mount Sion, and the tomb of the Virgin, and give their offerings to the captives. The bishop of Salisbury is honored by Saladin, talks with him of Richard's virtues, and asks that Latin priests serve at the Sepulcher, Bethlehem, and Nazareth. The pilgrims sail home, and Richard leaves Syria, praying God to let him come back, unaware of the captivity that awaits him in Austria and Germany, from which, ransomed, he wins back his lands from the king of France. Ambroise ends with the year the cross was lost, eleven hundred and eighty-eight years from the Incarnation.

Cil qui porterent le message
Those who carried the message
erent mult prodome e mult sage,
were very worthy-men and very wise
mais lor pechié ou lor peresce
but their sin or their sloth
lor dut empeirer lor proesce.
to-them was-to worsen their prowess
Li uns fu de Roches Guillames,
The one was of Roches William
en qui chief seoit bien li hiaumes;
on whose head sat well the helmet
l'autre iert Girard de Fornival,
the-other was Gerard of Furnival
e Pieres de Preals. A val
and Peter of Preaux To below

les plains de Rames chevalcherent;
the plains of Ramla rode
tant errerent e esploiterent
so-much journeyed and pressed-on
qu'al Thoron as Chevalers vindrent;
that-at-the Toron of-the Knights they-came
la s'aresturent e se tindrent
there themselves-halted and themselves held
por Saffadin que il queroient,
for Saphadin whom they sought
e son conduit aveir voleient;
and his safe-conduct to-have wished
si fu verté qu'il se dormirent,
so was truth that-they themselves slept
e si lonc demorer i firent
and so long delaying there made
que après relevee abassee.
that after afternoon lowered
Si com la rote errout seree,
So as the troop journeyed close
e avoient passé la plaigne,
and had passed the plain
e erent pres de la montaigne,
and were near of the mountain
ensi com il se regarderent,
thus as they themselves looked
mis sire Andreus e cil qu'i erent,
my lord Andrew and those who-there were
si virent cels qui lors venoient,
so saw those who then came

qui message fere devoient.
who message make ought
Quant il les virent e conurent,
When they them saw and knew
trestut esbai s'aresturent;
all dismayed themselves-halted
si oissiez dire as hauz homes:
so you-might-have-heard say to-the high men
«Ha! sire Deus, mar venu sumes,
Ah lord God ill come are-we
si Sarazin nos aperceivent!
if Saracens us perceive
Veez la cels venir qui nos deivent
See there those come who us ought
avant porter nostre message!
ahead to-carry our message
Nos n'erroms mie come sage;
We not-journey at-all as wise
car il apresme la vespree,
for it approaches the evening
e cele gent desatempree
and that folk immoderate
de l'ost n'est mie departie.
of the-host not-is at-all departed
Si nos aloms cele partie,
If we go that way
e nos n'i envoioms avant,
and we not-there send ahead
il nos vendront ja al devant,
they to-us will-come already to-the before

si avroms les testes perdues,
so we-shall-have the heads lost
e nos genz qui sunt esmeues;
and our folk who are moved
e nos sumes tot desarmé.»
and we are all unarmed
Li messagier furent blasmé,
The messengers were blamed
e neporquant tant les proierent
and nevertheless so-much them they-prayed
qu'el message les renvoierent,
that-into-the message them they-sent-back
e durement les hasta l'em.
and hard them hastened one
Cil vindrent vers Jerusalem,
Those came toward Jerusalem
e troverent dehors la vile
and found outside the town
des Turs logiez plus de deus mile.
of-the Turks lodged more than two thousand
L'amirail Saffadin tant quistrent
The-emir Saphadin so-much they-sought
qu'il le troverent, si lui distrent
that-they him found so to-him said
que nostre gent illoc venoient
that our folk there came
e que conduit lui requeroient,
and that safe-conduct him they-asked

e portoient chartres del roi,
and carried charters of-the king
e qu'il en preist bon conroi.
and that-he thereof should-take good measure
Mais Saffadin mult les reprist,
But Saphadin much them rebuked
e dist que grant folie emprist
and said that great folly undertook
e que fol conseil lor dona
and that mad counsel to-them gave
qui cele gent issi mena,
who that folk thus led
e que lor vies poi amoient,
and that their lives little they-loved
que sanz conduit issi erroient;
who without safe-conduct thus journeyed
e parlerent illoques tant
and spoke there so-much
que il aloit ja anuitant.
that it went already growing-dark
Eth vos la rote illoc venue,
Behold you the troop there come
de bon conseil e d'armes nue;
of good counsel and of-arms naked
e quant li Sarazin les virent,
and when the Saracens them saw
tel chiere e tel semblant lor firent
such face and such seeming to-them they-made

que por verité le vos di
that for truth it to-you I-say
qu'en la rote n'ot si hardi
that-in the troop not-had so bold
qu'il ne volsist od bele chiere
that-he not should-wish with fair face
estre a Sur ou a Acre ariere.
to-be at Tyre or at Acre back
Dejoste un mur cele nuit jurent,
Beside a wall that night they-lay
si sachiez que a grant dote furent;
so know that in great doubt they-were
e l'endemain li Sarazin
and the-next-day the Saracens
vindrent devant Salehadin
came before Saladin
e a ses piez s'agenoillerent.
and at his feet themselves-knelt
Si lui requistrent e proierent,
So him asked and prayed
si lui distrent: «Ha! droit soudans,
so to-him said Ah right sultan
ore seroit bien droit e tens
now would-be well right and time
de vengier nos de la maçacre
to avenge us for the massacre
que cist nos firent devant Acre.
which these to-us did before Acre
Sire, lais nos vengier noz peres,
Lord let us to-avenge our fathers

noz parenz, noz filz e noz freres,
our kinsmen our sons and our brothers
que cist ont mort e detrenchiez:
whom these have killed and cut-to-pieces
or puet chescons estre vengiez.»
now can each-one be avenged
Il respondi, si en ot droit,
He answered so thereof had right
que a ses amis en parleroit.
that with his friends thereof would-speak
Devant le soudan s'asemblerent,
Before the sultan themselves-assembled
e estroitement en parlerent.
and closely thereof spoke
La furent li haut Sarazin
There were the high Saracens
e li Mestoms a Saffadin;
and the Mestoms of Saphadin
si i fu Bedredin Dorderons,
so there was Bedr-ed-Din Dorderons
si distrent: «Sire, nos dirons
so said Lord we shall-say
ço qu'afiert a vostre hautesce.
this which-befits to your highness
Trop par sereit ço grant laidesce
Too-much very would-be this great ugliness
e grant blasme a la loi paiene,
and great blame to the law pagan
se iceste gent cristiene
if this folk Christian

qui ci est soz nostre poisance
who here is under our power
e qui croit en bone creance
and who believes in good faith
estoit si faitement ocise
were so in-manner killed
dedenz ço que la triuue est prise
within this that the truce is taken
de nos e del roi d'Engletere.
by us and by-the king of-England
Coment tendriez vos mes terre
How would-hold you more land
si vos faisiez tele fraiture
if you made such breach
en nul sens por nule aventure?
in any sense for any chance
E qui nos poroit ja meis croire?»
And who us could ever more believe
E Salehadins tot anoire
And Saladin all forthwith
prist ses serjanz e si manda
took his sergeants and so sent
por Saffadin, cui comanda
for Saphadin whom he-commanded
que li cristien guardé fussent
that the Christians guarded should-be
e que son sauf conduit eussent
and that his safe conduct they-should-have

e al sepulcre e as veages
and to-the sepulcher and to-the journeys
a faire lor pelerinages;
to make their pilgrimages
e assez plus les henorerent,
and much more them honored
tant que a Acre s'en tornerent.
until that to Acre themselves-thence turned
Ensi com il s'en retornerent,
Thus as they themselves-thence returned
e cil de nostre route errerent.
and those of our troop journeyed
Tot droit el point de l'enjorner,
All straight at-the point of the-daybreak
li soudans ot fait atorner
the sultan had made array
ses genz, qui les chemins guardoient
his folk who the roads guarded
quant li pelerin trespassoient,
when the pilgrims passed
si que aseur i trespassames
so that secure there we-passed
e les montaines sormontames,
and the mountains surmounted
e venimes a la monjoie.
and came to the monjoie
Lors eumes as cuers grant joie
Then we-had in-the hearts great joy
de Jerusalem que veismes:
of Jerusalem which we-saw

a terre a genouz nos meimes,
to earth on knees ourselves we-put
si come tuit le font par dete;
so as all it do by debt
si veimes mont d'Olivete,
so we-saw mount of-Olivet
la dont mut la procession
there whence moved the procession
quant Deus vint a sa passion.
when God came to his passion
Puis venimes vers la cité
Then we-came toward the city
ou Deus conquist son herité.
where God conquered his heritage
Cil qui avant chevalché eurent
Those who before ridden had
le sepulcre seint baissier porent;
the sepulcher holy to-kiss could
si nos dist la chevalerie
so to-us said the knighthood
qui fu en nostre compaignie
which was in our company
que cele sainte croiz sanz faille
that that holy cross without fail
qui fu perdue en la bataille
which was lost in the battle
lor fist Salehadins mostrer
to-them made Saladin show
e baissier la e aorer;
and to-kiss it and to-adore

e nos autres qui a pié fumes
and we others who on foot were
veimes ço que nos peumes:
saw this which we could
nos veismes le monument
we saw the monument
ou le cors Deu nomeement
where the body (of-)God namely
fu mis quant la mort ot sofferte.
was put when the death had suffered
La ot aucune offrende offerte;
There had some offering offered
mais li saraizin les pernoient
but the Saracens them took
quant nostre genz les i metoient,
when our folk them there put
e por ço petit i offrimes;
and for this little there we-offered
car as cheitifs le departimes
for to-the captives it we-distributed
que illoc estient en liens,
who there were in bonds
e de Frans e de Suliens:
and of Franks and of Syrians
a cels portames nostre offrende,
to those we-carried our offering
qui disoient: «Deu le lor rende!»
who said God it to-them render
Illoc esteoient en servage.
There they-were in servitude

Puis feimes autre veage
Then we-made other journey
droit sur le mont Calvarie a destre,
straight up the mount Calvary at right
ou cil murut qui deigna nestre,
where he died who deigned to-be-born
illoc ou la croiz fu fichee
there where the cross was fixed
e la seinte char clofichee,
and the holy flesh nailed
car la roche se depesça
for the rock itself broke
e fendi desqu'en Golgatha.
and split until-into Golgotha
Cel leu veimes e baisames;
That place we-saw and kissed
e d'iloc si nos en alames
and from-there so ourselves thence went
en Monte Sion en l'eglise,
into Mount Sion into the-church
que tote guaste estoit remise.
which all waste was left
Un liu veimes sor senestre
A place we-saw on left
la ou la mere al roi celestre
there where the mother of-the king celestial
transi el ciel a Deu son pere,
passed into-the heaven to God her father
qui de lui fist sa dolce mere;
who of her made his sweet mother

cel liu baisames en plorant,
that place we-kissed in weeping
puis nos en alames corant
then ourselves thence went running
a la seinte table veoir
to the holy table to-see
ou Deus velt mangier e seoir.
where God wishes to-eat and to-sit
Cele baisames eralment;
That we-kissed forthwith
si n'i demorames granment,
so not-there we-stayed long
car li Saraizin nos embloient
for the Saracens from-us stole
noz pelerins e sis muçoient,
our pilgrims and so-them hid
ça trois, ça quatre, par les crotes;
here three here four through the crypts
c'erent noz peors e nos dotes.
these-were our fears and our doubts
Puis en alames contre val,
Then thence we-went toward below
gent a pié e gent a cheval,
folk on foot and folk on horse
en Josaphas sor Siloé:
into Jehoshaphat upon Siloam
ensi nos fu dit e loé.
thus to-us was said and advised

La veismes la sepulture
There we-saw the tomb
del cors ou Deus prist nureture:
of-the body where God took nurture
cele baisames volenters
that we-kissed willingly
od piteos cuers e entiers,
with pitiful hearts and whole
puis alames o mult grant dote
then we-went with very great doubt
en icele meimes crote
into that very-same crypt
ou Deus estoit quant cil le pristrent
where God was when those him took
qui son precios cors ocistrent:
who his precious body killed
cel liu baisames sanz leissier
that place we-kissed without ceasing
od pité e od desirier,
with pity and with desire
e plorames o chaudes lermes;
and we-wept with hot tears
e bien en iert e liu e termes,
and well thereof was and place and term
car illoques ot les estables
for there had the stables
as chevals as genz des diables
for-the horses of-the folk of-the devils
qui les sainz lius Deu ordeoient;
who the holy places (of-)God befouled

e noz pelerins nos hastoient:
and our pilgrims us hastened
de Jerusalem nos partimes
from Jerusalem we departed
e a Acre nos en venimes.
and to Acre ourselves thence came
La tierce rote, li evesques,
The third troop the bishop
cil qui depuis fu arcevesques
he who since was archbishop
de Canterbire la cité,
of Canterbury the city
cil l'amena por verité;
he it-led for truth
si fu veirs que par sa proesce,
so was true that by his prowess
par son los e par sa hautesce,
by his praise and by his highness
li fist tant Salehadins faire
to-him made so-much Saladin do
d'enor com jo vos puis retraire;
of-honor as I to-you can recount
car encontre lui envoia
for toward him sent
ses genz, par qui il l'en proia
his folk by whom he him-thereof prayed
qu'il fust o lui a sa despense;
that-he should-be with him at his expense
mais li vesques ot tel defense
but the bishop had such defense

qu'il respondi as Sarazins,
that-he answered to-the Saracens
por ço qu'il estoit pelerins,
for this that-he was pilgrim
que son cust nient n'en prendroit
that his cost nothing not-thereof he-would-take
en nule fin n'en nul endroit;
in any end nor-in any place
e quant il son cust n'en velt prendre,
and when he his cost not-thereof wishes to-take
si fist mult sa maisnee entendre
so made much his household attend
a honorer lui e sa gent,
to honor him and his folk
e lor firent maint biau present;
and to-them made many-a fair present
e le fist mener par les lius
and him made lead through the places
ou hanta nostre sire Deus,
where frequented our lord God
puis le manda a parlement
then him summoned to parley
por veoir son contenement;
for to-see his bearing
la seinte croiz lui fist veoir,
the holy cross to-him made see
puis le fist devant li seoir,
then him made before him sit

e furent ensemble e parlerent
and were together and spoke
longuement e si demorerent;
long and so stayed
e il comença a enquere
and he began to inquire
des tesches le roi d'Engletere,
of-the qualities (of-)the king of-England
e que noz cristiens disoient
and what our Christians said
des sues que o lui estoient;
of-the his who with him were
e li vesques respondi: «Sire,
and the bishop answered Lord
de mon seignor bien vos puis dire
of my lord well to-you can-I say
que c'est li mieldres chevalers
that it-is the best knight
del monde e li mieldre guerriers,
of-the world and the best warrior
e larges e bien enteschiez.
and generous and well endowed
Ge n'acunt mie nos pechiez;
I not-count at-all our sins
mais qui avroit voz teches mises
but who would-have your qualities put
ovec les sues e assises,
with the his and set
nos disons bien qu'en tot le monde,
we say well that-in all the world

tant comm il clot a la reonde,
so-far as it closes at the round
n'avroit tels deus princes trovez,
not-would-have such two princes found
si vaillanz ne si esprovez.»
so valiant nor so proved
Li soudans l'evesque escouta,
The sultan the-bishop listened-to
si li dist: «Bien sai que molt a
so to-him said Well I-know that much has
el rei proesce e hardement;
in-the king prowess and boldness
mais il s'embat si folement!
but he himself-rushes so madly
Quel haut prince que jo ja fusse,
What high prince that I ever were
je voldroie mielz que jo eusse
I would-wish better that I had
largesce e sens o tot mesure
largesse and sense with all measure
que hardement o desmesure.»
than boldness with excess
Quant Salehadins longement
When Saladin long
ot parlé ensi faitement
had spoken thus in-manner
a l'evesque par latimiers,
to the-bishop by interpreters
e l'ot escoté volentiers,
and him-had listened-to willingly

lors dist c'un don li demandast,
then said that-a gift of-him he-should-ask
quel qu'il volsist e comandast,
whatever that-he should-wish and command
tel com il doner li devroit,
such as he give to-him ought
e ço seust que il l'avroit;
and this should-know that he it-would-have
e l'evesque l'en mercia,
and the-bishop him-thereof thanked
e dist: «Par ma foi, ici a
and said By my faith here has
grant chose, qui le set entendre;
great thing who it knows-how to-understand
mais, s'il vos plest, jo voil atendre,
but if-it you pleases I wish to-wait
e a Deu conseil en prendrai
and with God counsel thereof shall-take
anuit, e demain revendrai.»
tonight and tomorrow shall-come-back
E li soudans lui otreia.
And the sultan to-him granted
E cil el demain li preia,
And he on-the morrow to-him prayed
si fu grant chose qu'il conquist:
so was great thing that-he conquered
que al sepulcre, qu'il requist,
that at-the sepulcher which-he sought

ou n'avoit point de Deu servise
where not-had at-all of God service
fors de Suliens a lor guise,
except of Syrians in their guise
que deus de noz prestres latins,
that two of our priests Latin
chescon jor, e seirs e matins,
each day and evenings and mornings
e deus diacres ensement
and two deacons likewise
a estre lor sostenement,
to be their sustenance
ovec les Suliens servisent
with the Syrians should-serve
e des offrendes i vesquissent;
and from-the offerings there should-live
e autresi en Belleem
and likewise in Bethlehem
fust fait comm en Jerusalem,
should-be done as in Jerusalem
e autresi en Nazareht.
and likewise in Nazareth
Li soldans volt que il fust fet
The sultan wished that it should-be done
tant come meintendroit la tere;
so-long as would-maintain the land
e li bons vesques fist enquere
and the good bishop made seek
les provoires e fist chanter;
the priests and made sing

si se pot l'evesques vanter
so himself could the-bishop boast
que il rendi la chanterie
that he rendered the chanting
a Deu qui lors ne l'avoit mie.
to God who then not it-had at-all
* * *
(lacuna)
* * *
(lacuna)
e fait orent ço qu'il quistrent,
and done had this which-they sought
a Salehadin congié pristrent;
from Saladin leave they-took
de Jerusalem se tornerent
from Jerusalem themselves turned
e a Acre s'en retornerent.
and to Acre themselves-thence returned
Quant les genz furent revenues,
When the folk were come-back
totes les granz e les menues,
all the great and the small
del saint sepulcre e repeirees,
from-the holy sepulcher and returned
les nes furent aparillees,
the ships were prepared
li pelerin dedenz entrerent
the pilgrims within entered
e quant vent orent si siglerent.
and when wind they-had so sailed

Les nes furent tost departies
The ships were soon divided
e depeciees par parties:
and broken by parts
li un vindrent a salveté
the ones came to safety
al port ou il furent jeté,
to-the port where they were cast
li autre furent perillé,
the others were imperiled
e en plusors lius eissillié;
and in several places ruined
si en mururent autre sor mer,
so thereof died others upon sea
si orent covertor amer:
so had covering bitter
amer? mes dolz, que la dolçor
bitter but sweet for the sweetness
en sentirent al regne alçor;
thereof they-felt in-the kingdom higher
e li auquant s'i engroterent,
and the some themselves-there fell-ill
si que onques n'en respasserent;
so that ever not-thereof recovered
li autre orent leissié lor peres,
the others had left their fathers
lor cosins germains e lor freres
their cousins german and their brothers
morz ou d'armes ou d'enferté,
dead or of-arms or of-infirmity

dont il erent en grant nerté:
whereof they were in great blackness
tot autresi com li martir
all likewise as the martyrs
c'on vit de cest siecle partir
whom-one saw from this world depart
por Deu pristrent divers martire,
for God took diverse martyrdom
tot autresi, os jo bien dire,
all likewise dare I well say
orent cil diverses enjures
had those diverse injuries
e mult diverses aventures
and very diverse adventures
qui cest pelerinage enpristrent.
who this pilgrimage undertook
Mais meintes genz non sachanz distrent
But many-a folk not knowing said
puis plusors feiz par lor folie
after several times by their folly
qu'il n'orent rien fait en Sulie,
that-they not-had anything done in Syria
quant Jerusalem n'ert conquise;
when Jerusalem not-was conquered
mais n'orent pas bien l'ovre enquise,
but not-had at-all well the-work inquired
ainz blamerent ço qu'il ne sorent
rather blamed this which-they not knew
e ço ou onques lor piez n'orent.
and this where ever their feet not-had

Mais nos meimes qui i fuimes,
But we ourselves who there were
qui ce veimes e soumes
who this saw and knew
e qui covint les mals sentir,
and whom behooved the ills to-feel
nus n'en devom mie mentir
we not-thereof ought at-all lie
de ço que li autre soffrirent
of this which the others suffered
por amor Deu, que noz eilz virent;
for love (of-)God which our eyes saw
si os dire, oiant cels qu'i furent,
so dare-I say hearing those who-there were
que tels cent mile home i mururent
that such hundred thousand man there died
por ce qu'a femme ne gisoient,
for this that-with woman not they-lay
qui a l'amor Deu se tenoient,
who to the-love (of-)God themselves held
qui en cel point pas ne moreussent
who in that point at-all not would-have-died
si lor abstinences ne fussent;
if their abstinences not had-been
e si os bien dire en plevine,
and so dare-I well say in pledge
que d'emferté que de famine
what of-infirmity what of famine
en ot bien mort plus de trois mile,
thereof had well dead more than three thousand

qu'al siege d'Acre qu'en la vile;
what-at-the siege of-Acre what-in the town
e li prodome qui avoient
and the worthy-men who had
lor chapeleins e qui ooient
their chaplains and who heard
lor servise, com un evesques
their service as a bishop
u com uns tres sainz arcevesques,
or as a very holy archbishop
e qui en tel vie moroient,
and who in such life died
issi come li mal corroient,
so as the ills ran
cil seront o Deu a sa destre
those will-be with God at his right
el haut Jerusalem celestre;
in-the high Jerusalem celestial
e tels genz o le bien qu'i pristrent
and such folk with the good which-there they-took
l'autre Jerusalem conquistrent.
the-other Jerusalem conquered

Quant Richarz li rois d'Engletere
When Richard the king of-England
ot esté en la seinte terre
had been in the holy land
tant que tens fu del retorner,
until that time was of-the return
lors fist son passage atorner,
then made his passage arrange

e li fu sa nef atornee
and to-him was his ship arrayed
si que il n'i faillot rien nee,
so that it not-there lacked thing born
gent ne armes ne guarnesture.
folk nor arms nor provision
Lores fist proesce e nature
Then did prowess and nature
e que prosdom e que leaus;
and what worthy-man and what loyal
car por Guillame de Preals,
for for William of Preaux
qui por lui avoit esté pris,
who for him had been taken
leissa dis Sarazins de pris,
left ten Saracens of worth
qui mult rendissent grant avoir,
who much would-have-rendered great wealth
por le cors Guillame ravoir;
for the body (of-)William to-have-back
e par tot fist crier sa solte,
and through all made cry his pay
qu'il n'i eust plainte ne tolte,
that-it not-there should-have complaint nor seizure
e fist tot aquiter e rendre:
and made all quit and render
qui lors veist al congé prendre
who then should-have-seen at-the leave taking

12275 les genz qui après lui ploroient
the folk who after him wept
tendrement e por lui preoient,
tenderly and for him prayed
e regretoient ses proesces
and regretted his prowesses
e ses valors e ses largesces,
and his valors and his largesses
e disoient: «Hai! Sulie,
and said Ah Syria
12280 com hui remanez sanz aie!
how today remain-you without aid
Deus! se ore en fust la triuue enfraite,
God if now thereof were the truce broken
si come ele est mainte foiz faite,
so as it is many-a time done
qui est qui nos garantiroit,
who is who us would-protect
puis que li rois s'en partiroit?»
since that the king himself-thence would-depart
12285 Lors veissiez mult gent plorer.
Then you-might-have-seen many folk weep
E li rois sanz plus demorer,
And the king without more to-remain
qui encore ert mult desheitiez,
who still was much dejected
entra en mer a lor congiez,
entered into sea at their leave
e fist al vent lever les veilles,
and made to-the wind raise the sails

e curut la nuit as esteilles.
and ran the night by-the stars
Al matin a l'aube esclarcie,
At-the morning at the-dawn brightened
torna son vis devers Sulie
turned his face toward Syria
e dist, si que ses genz l'oirent
and said so that his folk it-heard
e que li autre l'entendirent:
and that the others it-heard
«He! Sulie, a Deu te comant!
Ah Syria to God thee I-commend
E Dampnedeus par son comant
And Lord-God by his command
me doinst encore tant d'espace,
me may-give still so-much of-space
se lui plest, que secors te face!
if to-him it-pleases that succor thee I-may-make
Car encore te cuit secore.»
For still thee I-think to-succor
Lors començа sa nef a corre.
Then began his ship to run
Mais ne savoit pas les nuisances,
But not knew at-all the harms
les granz meschiefs ne les pesances
the great mischiefs nor the griefs
qui devant les oilz li pendoient,
which before the eyes to-him hung
e les tormenz qui l'atendoient
and the torments which him-awaited

par la traison porpensee,
by the treason devised
que de Sulie fud mandee
which from Syria was sent
en France al roi des Hausasis,
into France to-the king of-the Assassins
por quoi il fud jeté et pris
by which he was cast and taken
el conduit Deu et el veage,
in-the conduct (of-)God and in-the journey
par quoi l'en prist son heritage
by which one took his heritage
e ses chastels de Normendie
and his castles of Normandy
par coveitise e par envie;
by covetousness and by envy
puis fu rainz a fin argent,
then was ransomed for fine silver
dont il tailla tote sa gent
whereby he taxed all his folk
e prist e croiz e filatires,
and took and crosses and phylacteries
calices, veissels e matires
chalices vessels and materials
d'or e d'argent par les mostiers;
of-gold and of-silver through the minsters
e il en iert si grant mestiers
and it thereof was so great need
qu'onques n'ot Deu ne saint ne sainte,
that-ever not-had God nor he-saint nor she-saint

dont il i a ja maint e mainte,
whereof it there has already many-a and many-a
qui sanz morir onques soffrist
who without dying ever suffered
plus mal por lui que li rois fist
more ill for him than the king did
dedenz la prison en Ostriche
within the prison in Austria
e en Alemaine la riche.
and in Germany the rich
De tot ice mot ne savoit;
Of all this word not knew
mais Deus qui servi il avoit,
but God whom served he had
e son sen e sa grant largesce,
and his sense and his great largesse
sa porveance, sa proesce,
his providence his prowess
* * *
(lacuna)
* * *
(lacuna)
e li baron qui l'ostagierent,
and the barons who him-gave-hostage
qui lor enfanz i envoierent,
who their children there sent
tant qu'il chalenja puis sa terre
until that-he claimed after his land
al rei de France e li mut guere;
from-the king of France and to-him moved war

e tant fist puis e tant ovra
and so-much did after and so-much worked
que tant ou plus en recovra
that as-much or more thereof recovered
que l'om li en avoit toloite.
than one to-him thereof had taken-away
Ensi fait Deus si s'ovre adroite,
Thus does God so his-work aright
qui que travailt en son servise,
who that toils in his service
que il li rent a sa devise.
that he to-him renders at his will
Si sachent tuit cil qui sunt ore
So let-them-know all those who are now
e tuit cil qui seront encore
and all those who will-be still
que l'estoire en icel point fine,
that the-history at that point ends
qui afiche por verté fine
which affirms for truth fine
que l'an que la croiz fu conquise
that the-year that the cross was taken
* * *
(lacuna)
ot mil anz e cent e uitante
had thousand years and hundred and eighty
e uit, e l'escrit le creante,
and eight and the-writing it grants

desci qu'en l'encarnacion,
until that-in the-incarnation
que le filz Deu prist nacion, 12350
that the son (of-)God took birth
qui od son pere vit e regne,
who with his father lives and reigns
et qui nos toz mete en son regne.
and who us all may-put in his kingdom